Chapter Thirty-six

INTERSECTIONS
### Chapter Thirty-six

**INTERSECTIONS**

#### Table of Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>36-1 GENERAL DESIGN CONTROLS</td>
<td>36-1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-1.01 General Design Considerations</td>
<td>36-1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-1.02 Intersection Components</td>
<td>36-1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-1.03 Intersection Types</td>
<td>36-1.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-1.03(a) General</td>
<td>36-1.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-1.03(b) Alternative Intersection Designs</td>
<td>36-1.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-1.04 Intersection Spacing</td>
<td>36-1.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-1.05 Intersection Alignment</td>
<td>36-1.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-1.05(a) Angled Intersections</td>
<td>36-1.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-1.05(b) Intersections on Curves</td>
<td>36-1.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-1.05(c) Offset Intersections</td>
<td>36-1.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-1.06 Profiles</td>
<td>36-1.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-1.06(a) Approach Gradients</td>
<td>36-1.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-1.06(b) Cross-Section Transitions</td>
<td>36-1.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-1.06(c) Profiles at Intersections</td>
<td>36-1.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-1.06(d) Drainage</td>
<td>36-1.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-1.07 Intersection Capacity Analysis</td>
<td>36-1.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-1.08 Design Vehicles</td>
<td>36-1.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-1.08(a) Types</td>
<td>36-1.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-1.08(b) Selection</td>
<td>36-1.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-1.09 Pedestrians and Bicyclists</td>
<td>36-1.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-1.10 Pavement Markings/Reflectorized Markers</td>
<td>36-1.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-1.11 Intersection Lighting</td>
<td>36-1.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-1.12 Bus Turnouts</td>
<td>36-1.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-2 TURNING RADII</td>
<td>36-2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-2.01 Design for Right-Turning Vehicles</td>
<td>36-2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-2.01(a) Design Vehicle</td>
<td>36-2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-2.01(b) Inside Clearance</td>
<td>36-2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-2.01(c) Encroachment</td>
<td>36-2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-2.01(d) Parking Lanes/Shoulders</td>
<td>36-2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-2.01(e) Pedestrian Considerations</td>
<td>36-2.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Table of Contents

## (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>36-2.01(f) Visibility of Traffic Control Devices</td>
<td>36-2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-2.01(g) Types of Radius Return Designs</td>
<td>36-2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-2.01(h) Turning Template(s)</td>
<td>36-2.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-2.01(i) Stop Bar Locations</td>
<td>36-2.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-2.01(j) Summary</td>
<td>36-2.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-2.01(k) Local Street Reconstruction</td>
<td>36-2.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-2.02 Corner Islands</td>
<td>36-2.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-2.02(a) General Design Considerations</td>
<td>36-2.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-2.02(b) Design Parameters</td>
<td>36-2.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-2.02(c) Design Techniques</td>
<td>36-2.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-2.03 Turning Roadways</td>
<td>36-2.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-2.03(a) Guidelines</td>
<td>36-2.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-2.03(b) Design Speed</td>
<td>36-2.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-2.03(c) Width</td>
<td>36-2.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-2.03(d) Horizontal Alignment</td>
<td>36-2.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-2.03(e) Deceleration/Acceleration Lanes</td>
<td>36-2.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-2.04 Left-Turn Control Radii</td>
<td>36-2.26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-3 AUXILIARY TURN LANES</td>
<td>36-3.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-3.01 Turn Lane Guidelines</td>
<td>36-3.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-3.01(a) Right-Turn Lane Warrants</td>
<td>36-3.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-3.01(b) Left-Turn Lane Warrants</td>
<td>36-3.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-3.02 Turn Lane Design Parameters</td>
<td>36-3.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-3.02(a) Turn Lane Widths</td>
<td>36-3.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-3.02(b) Turn Lane Lengths</td>
<td>36-3.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-3.03 Left-Turn Lane Design</td>
<td>36-3.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-3.03(a) General Criteria</td>
<td>36-3.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-3.03(b) Parallel Left-Turn Lanes Without Offset</td>
<td>36-3.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-3.03(c) Offset Left-Turn Lanes</td>
<td>36-3.27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-3.04 Right-Turn Lane Design</td>
<td>36-3.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-3.04(a) General</td>
<td>36-3.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-3.04(b) Access within Right-turn Lanes</td>
<td>36-3.34</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Table of Contents (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>36-3.04(c) Offset Right-turn Lanes</td>
<td>36-3.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-3.05 Dual Turn Lanes</td>
<td>36-3.37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-3.05(a) Guidelines</td>
<td>36-3.37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-3.05(b) Design</td>
<td>36-3.37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-3.04 Offset Right-turn Lanes</td>
<td>36-3.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-3.05 Dual Turn Lanes</td>
<td>36-3.37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-3.05(a) Guidelines</td>
<td>36-3.37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-3.05(b) Design</td>
<td>36-3.37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-4 CHANNELIZING ISLANDS AND MEDIAN TREATMENTS</td>
<td>36-4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-4.01 Island Types</td>
<td>36-4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-4.02 Selection of Island Type</td>
<td>36-4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-4.02(a) Flush or Traversable Islands</td>
<td>36-4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-4.02(b) Raised-Curb Islands</td>
<td>36-4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-4.02(c) Pavement Edge Islands</td>
<td>36-4.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-4.03 Design of Islands and Median Treatments</td>
<td>36-4.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-4.03(a) Channelizing Islands</td>
<td>36-4.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-4.03(b) Pedestrian Refuge Within Islands</td>
<td>36-4.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-4.04 Median Openings</td>
<td>36-4.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-4.04(a) Location/Spacing</td>
<td>36-4.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-4.04(b) Design</td>
<td>36-4.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-5 EXTENSION OF THROUGH LANES BEYOND AN INTERSECTION</td>
<td>36-5.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-6 INTERSECTION SIGHT DISTANCE</td>
<td>36-6.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-6.01 General</td>
<td>36-6.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-6.02 Design Procedures</td>
<td>36-6.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-6.03 Stop-Controlled Intersections</td>
<td>36-6.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-6.03(a) Turns Onto Major Roadway</td>
<td>36-6.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-6.03(b) Vehicle Crossing Mainline</td>
<td>36-6.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-6.03(c) Four-Way Stop</td>
<td>36-6.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-6.04 Signal-Controlled Intersections</td>
<td>36-6.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-6.05 Left Turns From the Major Road</td>
<td>36-6.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-6.06 Effect of Skew</td>
<td>36-6.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-6.07 Examples of ISD Applications</td>
<td>36-6.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-7 DRIVEWAYS, ENTRANCES, AND MINOR SIDEROADS</td>
<td>36-7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-7.01 General Considerations</td>
<td>36-7.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Table of Contents**
(Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>36-7.01(a)</td>
<td>Definitions .................................................................... 36-7.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-7.01(b)</td>
<td>Construction Projects Involving Proposed Entrances .......... 36-7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-7.01(c)</td>
<td>Construction Projects Involving Existing Entrances .......... 36-7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-7.01(d)</td>
<td>Construction Projects Involving Proposed Sideroads .......... 36-7.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-7.01(e)</td>
<td>Construction Projects Involving Existing Sideroads .......... 36-7.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-7.01(f)</td>
<td>Driveway Profiles .............................................................. 36-7.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-7.01(g)</td>
<td>Driveway Sight Distance ..................................................... 36-7.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-7.01(h)</td>
<td>Auxiliary Lanes .................................................................... 36-7.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-7.01(i)</td>
<td>Typical Entrance Drawings .................................................. 36-7.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-7.02</td>
<td>Entrance/Driveway Access Permit Process .......................... 36-7.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-8</td>
<td>INTERSECTION DESIGN NEAR RAILROADS ............................. 36-8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9</td>
<td>ROUNDABOUTS ....................................................................... 36-9.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9.01</td>
<td>General ............................................................................... 36-9.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9.02</td>
<td>Roundabout Selection ............................................................ 36-9.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9.02(a)</td>
<td>Comparison of Performance of Alternative Intersection Types ...................................................... 36-9.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9.02(b)</td>
<td>Selection Consideration Factors .............................................. 36-9.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9.02(c)</td>
<td>Locations ............................................................................... 36-9.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9.02(d)</td>
<td>Types ..................................................................................... 36-9.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9.03</td>
<td>Public Involvement .................................................................. 36-9.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9.04</td>
<td>Geometric Design ................................................................... 36-9.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9.04(a)</td>
<td>Design Speed .......................................................................... 36-9.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9.04(b)</td>
<td>Vehicle Paths .......................................................................... 36-9.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9.04(c)</td>
<td>Speed Consistency ................................................................... 36-9.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9.04(d)</td>
<td>Design Vehicle ........................................................................ 36-9.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9.04(e)</td>
<td>Non-motorized Design Users .................................................... 36-9.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9.04(f)</td>
<td>Size ......................................................................................... 36-9.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9.04(g)</td>
<td>Alignment of Approaches and Entries .................................... 36-9.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9.04(h)</td>
<td>Entry Design ........................................................................... 36-9.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9.04(i)</td>
<td>Entry Width ............................................................................. 36-9.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9.04(j)</td>
<td>Circulatory Roadway Width ..................................................... 36-9.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9.04(k)</td>
<td>Central Island .......................................................................... 36-9.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9.04(l)</td>
<td>Truck Aprons ............................................................................ 36-9.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9.04(m)</td>
<td>Exit Design ............................................................................. 36-9.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9.04(n)</td>
<td>Splitter Islands ........................................................................ 36-9.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9.04(o)</td>
<td>Stopping Sight Distance ........................................................... 36-9.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9.04(p)</td>
<td>Intersection Sight Distance ..................................................... 36-9.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9.04(q)</td>
<td>Vertical Considerations ........................................................... 36-9.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9.04(r)</td>
<td>Bus Stop Locations ................................................................. 36-9.27</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table of Contents

(Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>36-9.04(s)</td>
<td>Right-turn Bypass Lane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9.04(t)</td>
<td>Rural Roundabouts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9.04(u)</td>
<td>Mini-roundabouts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9.04(v)</td>
<td>Staging Single-Lane versus Multilane Roundabout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9.05</td>
<td>Operational Performance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9.05(a)</td>
<td>Entering, Circulating, and Exiting Volumes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9.05(b)</td>
<td>Capacity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9.05(c)</td>
<td>Capacity Software</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9.05(d)</td>
<td>Traffic Control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9.05(e)</td>
<td>Access Control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9.06</td>
<td>Safety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9.07</td>
<td>Pedestrian and Bicycle Accommodations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9.07(a)</td>
<td>Pedestrians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9.07(b)</td>
<td>Bicycles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9.08</td>
<td>Parking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9.09</td>
<td>Illumination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-9.10</td>
<td>Signing and Delineation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-10</td>
<td>ALTERNATIVE INTERSECTIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-10.01</td>
<td>Restricted Crossing U-turn Intersections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-10.01(a)</td>
<td>General Design Considerations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-10.01(b)</td>
<td>Signalization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-10.01(c)</td>
<td>Safety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-10.01(d)</td>
<td>Signing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-10.01(e)</td>
<td>Access Management and Right of way Considerations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-10.01(f)</td>
<td>Pedestrian Accommodations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-10.01(g)</td>
<td>Stakeholder Outreach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-10.02</td>
<td>Median U-Turn Intersections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-10.02(a)</td>
<td>General Design Considerations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-10.02(b)</td>
<td>Safety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-10.02(c)</td>
<td>Signing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-10.02(d)</td>
<td>Access Management and Right of way Considerations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-10.02(e)</td>
<td>Pedestrian Accommodations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-10.02(f)</td>
<td>Stakeholder Outreach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-10.03</td>
<td>Displaced Left-Turn Intersections</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Table of Contents (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>36-10.03(a)</td>
<td>General Design Considerations.......................... 36-10.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-10.03(b)</td>
<td>Safety.................................................................. 36-10.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-10.03(c)</td>
<td>Operations and Signing........................................ 36-10.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-10.03(d)</td>
<td>Pedestrian and Bicyclist Accommodations.................. 36-10.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-10.03(e)</td>
<td>Access Issues.................................................... 36-10.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-10.03(f)</td>
<td>Stakeholder Outreach............................................ 36-10.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-10.04</td>
<td>Continuous Green T Intersections.................................. 36-10.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-10.04(a)</td>
<td>General Design Considerations.......................... 36-10.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-10.04(b)</td>
<td>Signalization...................................................... 36-10.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-10.04(c)</td>
<td>Access............................................................... 36-10.27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-10.04(d)</td>
<td>Safety.................................................................. 36-10.27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-10.04(e)</td>
<td>Pedestrian Accommodations........................................ 36-10.27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36-11</td>
<td>REFERENCES.................................................................. 36-11.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter Thirty-six
INTERSECTIONS

Intersections are an important part of the highway system. The operational efficiency, capacity, safety, and cost of the overall system are largely dependent upon its design, especially in urban areas. The primary objective of intersection design is to provide for the convenience, ease, comfort, and safety of those traversing the intersection while reducing potential conflicts between vehicles, bicycles, and pedestrians. Chapter 36 provides guidance in the design of intersections including alignment, profile, design vehicles, turning radii, right-turning roadways, left- and right-turn lanes, intersection sight distance, channelized islands, and intersections near railroads. Information that is also applicable to intersections is included in the following Chapters:

- Guidelines for preparing and processing intersection design studies are discussed in Chapter 14.
- Application of bicycle and pedestrian accommodations through intersections is discussed in Chapter 17.
- The various curb types used for channelization, islands, and medians are discussed in Chapter 34.
- Selection of median widths at intersections is discussed in Chapter 34.
- Access management near intersections is discussed in Chapter 35.
- Guidance pertaining to intersections on Strategic Regional Arterials (SRA’s) is discussed in Chapter 46.
- Two-way left-turn lanes are discussed in Chapter 48.
- Criteria for intersections on 3R projects are discussed in Chapter 49.
- The warrants and design criteria for intersection lighting are discussed in Chapter 56.
- Guidance on intersection traffic control devices, including striping, signing, and traffic signals is discussed in Chapter 57.
- Accessibility at intersections for persons with disabilities, including the design of compliant curb ramps, crosswalks, and roadway approach grades is discussed in Chapter 58.
**36-1 GENERAL DESIGN CONTROLS**

**36-1.01 General Design Considerations**

In every intersection design, there are many conflicting requirements that must be balanced against each other to produce a safe and efficient design. The five basic elements that must be taken into consideration include:

1. **Human Factors.** These include:
   - driving habits,
   - ability to make decisions,
   - driver expectancy,
   - decision and reaction time,
   - conformance to natural paths of movement, and
   - pedestrian use and habits.

2. **Traffic Considerations.** These include:
   - capacity,
   - DHV,
   - vehicular composition,
   - turning movements,
   - vehicular speeds (design and operating), and
   - safety.

3. **Physical Elements.** These include:
   - character and line of abutting property,
   - topography,
   - right-of-way,
   - horizontal alignment,
   - vertical alignment,
   - coordination of vertical profiles of the intersecting roads,
   - coordination of horizontal and vertical alignment for intersections on curves,
   - available sight distance,
   - intersection angle,
   - conflict area,
   - geometrics,
   - channelization,
   - traffic control devices,
   - lighting,
   - safety features,
   - bicycle traffic,
   - environmental impact, and
   - drainage requirements.
4. **Economic Factors.** These include:
   - cost of improvements;
   - crash history;
   - effects on adjacent property (e.g., access to businesses); and
   - impact on energy.

5. **Functional Intersection Area.** An intersection can be defined by both functional and physical areas. These are illustrated in Figure 36-1.A. The functional area of the intersection extends both upstream and downstream from the physical intersection area and includes any auxiliary lanes and their associated channelization.

The essence of good intersection design requires that the physical elements be designed to minimize the potential conflicts among cars, trucks, buses, bicycles, and pedestrians. In addition, human factors of the drivers and pedestrians must be taken into account while keeping costs and impacts to a minimum.
PHYSICAL AND FUNCTIONAL INTERSECTION AREA

Figure 36-1.A
36-1.02 **Intersection Components**

Figure 36-1.B illustrates several of the components that may be included in a typical intersection.
36-1.03 Intersection Types

36-1.03(a) General

Intersections are usually a three-leg, four-leg, or multi-leg design. Individual intersections may vary in size and shape and may be channelized. The principal design factors that affect the selection of intersection type and its design characteristics are discussed in Section 36-1.01. Selection of the intersection type will be determined on a case-by-case basis.

Multi-leg intersections are those with five or more intersection legs. Where volumes are light and stop control is used, it may be satisfactory to have all intersection legs intersect at a common, all-paved area. At other than minor intersections, safety and efficiency are improved by rearrangements that remove some conflicting movements from the major intersection. This may be accomplished by realigning one or more of the intersecting legs and combining some traffic movements at adjacent subsidiary intersections or, in some cases, making one or more legs one-way departing from the intersection. Wherever practical, avoid using multi-leg intersections.

36-1.03(b) Alternative Intersection Designs

Some nontraditional designs may offer substantial advantages under certain conditions compared to corresponding conventional at-grade intersections or grade-separated diamond interchanges. The most commonly considered design options include:

- displaced left-turn (DLT) intersection, also known as continuous flow intersection (CFI),
- median U-turn intersection (MUT),
- quadrant roadway intersection (QR),
- restricted crossing U-turn intersection (RCUT), also known as a J-turn or Superstreet,
- continuous green T intersection (CGT)
- double crossover diamond (DCD) interchange, also known as diverging diamond interchange (DDI), and
- displaced left-turn (DLT) interchange.

Section 36-10 provides guidance for RCUT, MUT, DLT and CGT intersections. Section 37-3.10 describes opportunities and design considerations for DDIs. Highway Capacity Software (HCS) now addresses the capacity of many of these alternative intersection types, in addition to more traditional intersection types; see Section 36-1.07.

Designers may also reference the FHWA publication entitled, Alternative Intersections/Interchanges: Information Report (AIIR), which can be found on the FHWA website. Some potentially useful information is presented on geometric design features, operational and safety issues, access management, costs, construction sequencing, and environmental benefits.
36-1.04 Intersection Spacing

Spacing for unsignalized intersections and driveways will depend on the available stopping sight distance, intersection sight distance, traffic volumes, turning volumes, the addition of turn lanes, turning speeds, access control, and local development. The actual spacing will be determined on a case-by-case basis.

When introducing a new intersection, the designer must ensure that there is sufficient distance between the new and adjacent intersections so that they form distinct intersections. Avoid short distances between intersections, if practical, because they may impede traffic operations. For example, if two intersections are close together, they must be considered as one intersection for signal phasing purposes. To operate safely, each leg of the intersection may require a separate green phase; however, this may reduce the capacity for both intersections.

The need to efficiently move high volumes of traffic, especially during peak periods, is a major consideration in the spacing of signalized intersections. It is important that the signals be synchronized to efficiently move traffic. Figure 36-1.C illustrates the relationship between speed of progression, cycle length, and signalized intersection spacing.

36-1.05 Intersection Alignment
36-1.05(a) Angled Intersections

Highways should intersect at right angles. Intersections at acute angles are undesirable because they:

- restrict vehicular turning movements,
- require additional pavement and channelization for large trucks,
- increase the exposure time for vehicles and pedestrians crossing the main traffic flow, and
- restrict the crossroad sight distance.

Preferably, the angle of intersection should be within 15 degrees of perpendicular. This amount of skew can often be tolerated because the impact on sight lines and turning movements is not significant. Under restricted conditions where obtaining the right-of-way to straighten the angle of intersection would be impractical, an intersection angle up to 30 degrees from perpendicular may be retained for existing intersections, where historical crash data corroborates this decision. Where turning movements are significantly unbalanced, the intersections may be angled to favor the predominant movement. Intersection angles beyond these ranges may warrant more positive traffic control (e.g., all stop, traffic signals) or geometric improvements (e.g., realignment, greater corner sight distance).

Figure 36-1.D illustrates various angles of intersections and potential improvements to the alignment. Avoid using short-radius curves or unnatural travel paths near the intersection simply to reduce the intersection skew.
### US Customary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cycle Length (sec)</th>
<th>25</th>
<th>30</th>
<th>35</th>
<th>40</th>
<th>45</th>
<th>50</th>
<th>55</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Intersection Spacing for Progression (2)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>1,100 ft</td>
<td>1,320 ft</td>
<td>1,540 ft</td>
<td>1,760 ft</td>
<td>1,980 ft</td>
<td>2,200 ft</td>
<td>2,430 ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>1,280 ft</td>
<td>1,540 ft</td>
<td>1,800 ft</td>
<td>2,050 ft</td>
<td>2,310 ft</td>
<td>2,500 ft</td>
<td>2,640 ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>1,470 ft</td>
<td>1,760 ft</td>
<td>2,050 ft</td>
<td>2,350 ft</td>
<td>2,640 ft</td>
<td>2,640 ft</td>
<td>2,640 ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>1,630 ft</td>
<td>1,980 ft</td>
<td>2,310 ft</td>
<td>2,640 ft</td>
<td>2,640 ft</td>
<td>2,640 ft</td>
<td>2,640 ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>2,200 ft</td>
<td>2,640 ft</td>
<td>2,640 ft</td>
<td>2,640 ft</td>
<td>2,640 ft</td>
<td>2,640 ft</td>
<td>2,640 ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150(1)</td>
<td>2,640 ft</td>
<td>2,640 ft</td>
<td>2,640 ft</td>
<td>2,640 ft</td>
<td>2,640 ft</td>
<td>2,640 ft</td>
<td>2,640 ft</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Metric

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cycle Length (sec)</th>
<th>25</th>
<th>30</th>
<th>35</th>
<th>40</th>
<th>45</th>
<th>50</th>
<th>55</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Intersection Spacing for Progression (2)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>335 m</td>
<td>400 m</td>
<td>470 m</td>
<td>535 m</td>
<td>605 m</td>
<td>670 m</td>
<td>730 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>390 m</td>
<td>470 m</td>
<td>550 m</td>
<td>625 m</td>
<td>705 m</td>
<td>760 m</td>
<td>800 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>450 m</td>
<td>535 m</td>
<td>625 m</td>
<td>715 m</td>
<td>800 m</td>
<td>800 m</td>
<td>800 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>495 m</td>
<td>605 m</td>
<td>705 m</td>
<td>800 m</td>
<td>800 m</td>
<td>800 m</td>
<td>800 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>670 m</td>
<td>800 m</td>
<td>800 m</td>
<td>800 m</td>
<td>800 m</td>
<td>800 m</td>
<td>800 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150(1)</td>
<td>800 m</td>
<td>800 m</td>
<td>800 m</td>
<td>800 m</td>
<td>800 m</td>
<td>800 m</td>
<td>800 m</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**

1. Represents maximum cycle length for actuated signal if all phases are used.
2. From a practical standpoint when considering progression, the distance between signalized intersections will usually be 2640 ft (800 m) or less. Therefore, the values in the table have been limited to 2640 ft (800 m)

**SIGNALIZED INTERSECTION SPACING GUIDELINES**

**FIGURE 36-1.C**

---

**SIGNALIZED INTERSECTION SPACING GUIDELINES**

**FIGURE 36-1.C**

---

HARD COPIES UNCONTROLLED
Notes:

1. Where there are high volumes of left turns from the major road, avoid using the offset intersection alignment illustrated in “C.”

2. Revised alignments “C” and “D” are not desirable in agricultural areas with large numbers of farm vehicles crossing the major road.

REALIGNMENT OF INTERSECTIONS

Figure 36-1.D
Intersections on Curves

Preferably, all legs of an intersection should be on a tangent section. Where a minor road intersects a major road on a horizontal curve, the geometric design of the intersection becomes significantly more complicated, particularly for sight distance, turning movements, channelization, and superelevation. The following guidelines address horizontal alignment at intersections:

1. **Realignment.** If relocation of the intersection is not practical, the designer may be able to realign the minor road to intersect the major road perpendicular to a tangent on the horizontal curve; see example “E” in Figure 36-1.D. Although an improvement, this arrangement may still result in difficult turning movements due to superelevation on the major road.

2. **Superelevated Mainline.** If the mainline is on a horizontal curve, the mainline superelevation rate must be minimized so that slowing or stopped vehicles do not slide across the pavement during wet or icy conditions. Figure 36-1.E provides the criteria for the maximum superelevation rate and rollover criteria that should be used where an important crossroad intersects a superelevated State highway. An important crossroad may be a marked highway, county highway, township road, or town street.

3. **Curved Approach.** Where a State highway or local road is on a curved alignment and is approaching a stop condition, special consideration is required in the design of the horizontal curvature prior to the intersection. This condition is illustrated in Figure 36-1.F. When designing this type of an approach, consider the following guidelines:

   - To design the horizontal curve, assume a design speed 20 mph (30 km/hr) less than the approach speed, but not less than 30 mph (50 km/hr) for design speeds less than or equal to 50 mph (80 km/hr).

   - The superelevation rate on the approach curve to an intersection should be limited to a maximum superelevation rate of 5% or less. The objective is to use as flat an alignment as practical with lower superelevation. The preferred design is to maintain a normal crown section through the curve assuming Method 2 distribution of superelevation. The minimum radius should not be less than that permitted for the highway classification. For additional guidance on horizontal curve designs; see Chapter 32.

   - Provide a short tangent section prior to the intersection. This will allow for the superelevation runoff to be developed outside of the intersection radius returns.

This procedure recognizes the need to accommodate a reasonable operating speed on a stop-controlled approach, while minimizing the potential for adverse operations on superelevated pavements during snow and ice conditions. Where the curved road is a local facility, design the curvature using the Bureau of Local Roads and Streets’ criteria. With the local roads criteria, the design is dependent on ADT and, in many cases due to the low ADT, the local facility can be designed with a normal crown section.
### Type of Improvement Category

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Improvement Category</th>
<th>Maximum Superelevation Rate “e” for Intersections on Curve</th>
<th>Rollover Guidelines</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>“New Construction” at an important crossroad</td>
<td>4% Desirable Maximum</td>
<td>5% Desirable Maximum 6% Maximum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To remain in place with “Reconstruction” at an important crossroad</td>
<td>6% Maximum</td>
<td>7% Desirable Maximum 8% Maximum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To remain in place with “Reconstruction” at a minor crossroad</td>
<td>8% Maximum</td>
<td>9% Desirable Maximum 10% Maximum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### INTERSECTION WITH SUPERELEVATED MAINLINE

*Figure 36-1.E*
INTERSECTION WITH SUPERELEVATED SIDE ROAD

Figure 36-1.F
4. **Frontage Road Approach.** Where a stop-controlled frontage road approaches a grade separated crossroad, the typical curved alignment may be replaced with a “buttonhook” design to minimize impacts and land acquisition; see Figure 36-1.G. This layout is especially suited to those cases where turning traffic between the frontage road and crossroad is light compared to the through traffic on the frontage road.

36-1.05(c) **Offset Intersections**

In general, 4-leg intersections should be designed such that opposing approaches line up with each other (i.e., there is no offset between opposing approaches). However, this is not always practical. Figure 36-1.H presents a diagram of an intersection with an offset between opposing approaches. Because of possible conflicts with overlapping turning vehicles, offset intersections should only be allowed to remain on low-volume approaches. The following criteria will apply for offset intersection approaches:

1. **Maximum Offset.** The maximum offset is determined from the application of a taper equal to $V:1$ ($0.6V:1$) applied to the intersection width, where $V$ is the design speed in miles per hour (kilometers per hour); see Figure 36-1.H. In restricted locations and where $V \leq 45$ mph (70 km/hr), the applied taper may be $V^2/60$ ($V^2/155$). $V$ is selected as follows:
   - $V = 20$ mph (30 km/hr) for stop-controlled approaches.
   - $V =$ the roadway design speed for the free-flowing approaches at a stop-controlled intersection.
   - $V =$ the roadway design speed for the offset approaches at a signalized intersection.

2. **Turning Conflicts.** Evaluate the entire intersection for conflicts that may result from turning vehicles at an offset intersection. For example, offsets where the “jog” is to the left may result in significant interference between simultaneous left-turning vehicles.

3. **Evaluation Factors.** In addition to potential vehicular conflicts, the designer should evaluate the following at existing or proposed offset intersections:
   - through and turning volumes;
   - type of traffic control;
   - impact on all turning maneuvers;
   - intersection geometrics (e.g., sight distance, curb/pavement edge radii); and
   - crash history at existing intersections.

Where existing offset intersections are being considered to remain, the designer should coordinate the intersection design and traffic control requirements with BDE and the district Bureau of Operations.
ALTERNATIVE FRONTAGE ROAD INTERSECTION
(Buttonhook Design)

Figure 36-1.G

Provide adequate intersection sight distance for the stopped vehicle.
Notes:

1. Desirable taper rate is V:1 (0.6V:1), where V = design speed in mph (km/hr).
2. See discussion in Section 36-1.05(c) for more information.

OFFSET INTERSECTION

Figure 36-1.H
36-1.06 Profiles

Many drivers are unable to judge the effect of substantial profile grades on stopping and accelerating distances. Their normal deductions and reactions may thus be in error at a critical time. The design should avoid combinations of grade lines that make vehicular control difficult at intersections. To accomplish this, consider the profile for all roadway approaches to and through the intersection. The following criteria will apply.

36-1.06(a) Approach Gradients

The profile gradients of intersecting highways should be as flat as practical on those intersection approaches that will be used for storage of stopped vehicles and the crossing of pedestrians. This area is commonly referred to as the storage space or storage platform.

The designer shall consider the following in the design of intersection approach gradients:

1. State Highways. On the mainline highway, the storage platform gradient should be a minimum of 1% and a maximum of 2%, which will optimize operations for motorists and bicyclists and ensure both compliance with ADA standards (see Chapter 58 for information on Accessibility Standards) and proper roadway drainage.

On important side roads (e.g., other state highway, county highway, local arterial) approaching the state highway, the storage platform gradient should be a minimum of 1% and a maximum of 2% draining away from the mainline highway. Maintain this gradient through the expected storage distance on that leg. At a minimum, provide the storage platform gradient on the side road for a distance of 50 ft to 100 ft (15 m to 30 m) beyond the edge of the mainline traveled way or to the ditch line of an arterial highway. Again, the selection of grades 2% or less will optimize operations for motorists and bicyclists and ensure compliance with ADA standards.

For new intersection construction projects where pedestrians are a design user of the facility, compliance with accessibility standards is mandatory. For new construction/reconstruction projects involving intersections, intersection gradients complying with ADA criteria should be initially designed and constructed regardless of existing pedestrian presence. Should pedestrian accommodations be added along the facility in the future, applying this approach will ensure ADA compliance can be met without the need for costly intersection reconstruction.

For existing locations within roadway improvement project limits, intersection gradients greater than 2% may necessitate geometric modifications to the roadway profile to meet accessibility standards, when either marked or unmarked crosswalks exist or are proposed. Sections 58-1.09 and 58-1.10 describe crosswalk cross-slope requirements based on whether or not there is “yield or stop control” for approaching vehicle traffic, and how this can affect roadway approach gradients. Where pedestrians are not a design user of the facility, intersection gradients greater than 3% will require correction of certain
design factors (e.g., stopping sight distances, deceleration lengths, traffic signal timing) to produce operating conditions as equivalent as practicable to those on level highways.

Any gradient through an intersection must reflect the practicalities of matching the basic profiles of the intersecting roadways and shoulders. When desirable intersection approach gradients, as discussed above, cannot be achieved due to terrain, right-of-way, or other important concerns on any project defined as an alteration of the facility, see Section 58-1.01, a design exception and/or a request for a maximum extent practicable determination (MEP) may be necessary; see Chapter 31.

2. Local Roads and Streets. For local collectors, local roads or streets, and entrances to the mainline highway, provide a profile that will drain away from the mainline highway. Where a local facility (e.g., township road, county roadway, low-volume town street) intersects a State highway on a tangent section, the side-road storage platform gradient may be a maximum of 4% draining away from the State highway, unless a marked or unmarked crosswalk exists or is proposed across the storage platform of the facility. For these locations, approach gradients steeper than 2% may necessitate geometric modifications to the roadway profile to meet accessibility standards; see Section 58-1.09.

3. Intersection Rollover. The algebraic difference between mainline highway and side road should not exceed the rollover guidelines described in Figure 36-1.E.

4. Grade Lines. The principles for coordinating the horizontal and vertical alignment discussed in Chapter 33 are also applicable to vertical profiles through intersections. In addition, do not place intersections on or near crest vertical curves unless the vertical curve is flat enough for the intersection pavement to be seen assuming decision sight distance criteria.

36-1.06(b) Cross-Section Transitions

One or more of the approaching legs of an intersection may need to be transitioned (or warped) to meet the cross section of the two crossing roads. The following applies:

1. Stop Controlled. Where the minor road is stop controlled, maintain the profile and cross section of the major road through an intersection and transition the cross slope of the stop-controlled roadway to match the major road cross slope and profile.

2. Signalized Intersection. At signalized intersections, or potentially signalized intersections, transition the cross section of the minor road to meet the profile and cross slope of the major road. Where compromises are necessary between two major roadways, provide the smoother riding characteristics to the roadway with the higher traffic volumes and operating speeds.

3. Transition Rates. Where one or both intersecting roadways are transitioned, the designer must determine the length and rate of transition from the typical section to the modified section. Desirably, design the transition to meet the general principles of superelevation transition which apply to that roadway (i.e., open-roadway or low-speed urban street
conditions); see Section 32-3. When these criteria are applied to intersection transition rates, the applied design speed is typically:

- 20 mph (30 km/hr) below the design speed but not less than 30 mph (50 km/hr) for a stop-controlled roadway,
- the highway design speed for a free-flowing roadway, or
- the highway design speed on each roadway of a signalized intersection.

At a minimum and consistent with field conditions, transition the approach pavements of an urban intersection within the curb or radius returns and for rural intersections within a distance of 50 ft (15 m).

### 36-1.06(c) Profiles at Intersections

Where the cross section of the minor road is warped to meet the major road, provide a vertical curve between the side road approach gradient and the mainline pavement; see Figure 36-1.I. The following vertical curve options are presented in order from the most desirable to the least desirable:

1. **Vertical Curves (SSD).** The criteria for stopping sight distance as described in Chapter 33 should be used for the vertical curve. Use the design speed discussed in Section 36-1.06(b) to design the vertical curve.

2. **Sag Vertical Curves (Minimum Comfort).** Under restricted conditions where the SSD criteria is not practical, the sag vertical curves at intersection approaches may be based on the following formulas:

   \[
   K = (0.1 \, V)^2 \\
   K = (0.034 \, V)^2 \\
   L = K \, A
   \]

   where:
   - \( K \) = the horizontal distance in ft (meters) needed to produce a 1% change in the gradient along the curve
   - \( A \) = algebraic difference between the two tangent grades, %
   - \( V \) = design speed, mph (km/hr)
   - \( L \) = length of vertical curve, ft (m)

3. **Angular Breaks.** At stop-controlled intersections, angular breaks are typically provided when warping the cross section of the minor approach to meet the mainline cross section. Figure 36-1.I presents a schematic of vertical profiles through an intersection. Figure 36-1.E provides the maximum rollover guidelines which are also applicable for changes in angular breaks.
Notes:

Desirably, the minor road profile should tie into the mainline travel lane cross slope; however, where the minor road is stop controlled, it will be acceptable for the minor road profile to tie into the mainline shoulder cross slope. Actual field conditions will determine the final design.

See Item 1 in Section 36-1.06(a) for storage platform gradients.

At signalized intersections, the most desirable cross slope option will be to transition all approach legs into a planar surface through the intersection and to limit the centerline rollover on the mainline to 2% - 3%.

For a signal controlled minor road descending from the mainline, maintain the travel lane cross slope of the mainline roadway through the length of the storage platform.

VERTICAL PROFILES OF INTERSECTING ROADS

Figure 36-1.1
4. **Driveways.** For driveway profiles with and without sidewalks, the designer should refer to Section 36-7 and the IDOT Policy on Permits for Access Driveways to State Highways, 92 Ill. Admin. Code 550.

36-1.06(d) **Drainage**

Evaluate the profile and transitions at all intersections for impacts on drainage. This is especially important for channelized intersections on curves and grades. This may require the designer to check superelevation transition lengths to ensure flat sections are minimized. Low points on approach roadway profiles should be beyond a raised corner island to prevent water from being trapped and causing ponding.

36-1.07 **Intersection Capacity Analysis**

Capacity analysis influences several geometric design features including the number of approach lanes, auxiliary lanes, lane widths, channelization, and number of departure lanes. In addition, this analysis in conjunction with the Illinois Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices will determine whether an intersection may need to be signalized or stop controlled. Any considered change in traffic control should be reviewed with the district Bureau of Operations for concurrence.

It is important that the level of service for a signalized intersection be calculated for each lane group (a lane group may be one or more movements), each intersection approach, and the intersection as a whole. Level of service criteria are provided in the geometric design tables in Part V, Design of Highway Types, of the BDE Manual.

Once the minimum level of service has been selected and design traffic volumes are determined, use the Highway Capacity Manual and the Highway Capacity Software (HCS) to perform the detailed capacity analyses. Ensure that data used in the analyses are applicable for the intersection (i.e., do not assume the program default values are automatically applicable for the intersection). Other capacity and signal analysis programs may be used provided they are approved for use by the BDE. To be eligible for approval, the output results must be comparable to the HCS.

If the intersection is part of a traffic signal system, check the intersection design with an approved traffic progression program. These programs analyze all signalized intersections in the system to determine the overall capacity of the system. HCS is now able to perform both standalone intersection and corridor analyses. Whenever the information is available and relevant to the design, the capacity analysis should include nearby adjacent intersections within the corridor, as both upstream and downstream intersections can have a significant impact on overall capacity and delay. Also, see Figure 36-1.C for signalized intersection spacing guidelines.

In addition, if the capacity analysis at an intersection shows a saturated or over-saturated flow (i.e., flow rate at or over capacity, v/c ≥ 1.0) for any movement, a multi-period analysis within HCS is necessary to appropriately calculate the effects of residual queue back-up and sustained spillback in determining the actual level of service and delay for the intersection. See the Highway Capacity Manual (HCM) and HCS for more information.
36-1.08  Design Vehicles

36-1.08(a)  Types

The design vehicle affects the radius returns, left-turn radii, lane widths, median openings, turning roadways, and sight distances at an intersection. The basic design vehicles used by IDOT for intersection design are:

- **P** — Passenger car; includes vans and pickup trucks.
- **S-BUS-40 (S-BUS-12)** — 84-passenger school bus.
- **SU-30 (SU-9)** — Single-unit truck with an overall vehicle length of 30 ft.
- **WB-40 (WB-12)** — Tractor/Semitrailer combination with an overall wheelbase of 40 ft (12.2 m).
- **WB-50 (WB-15)** — Tractor/Semitrailer combination with an overall wheelbase of 50 ft (15.2 m).
- **WB-55 (WB-17)** — Tractor/Semitrailer combination with an overall wheelbase of 55 ft (16.8 m).
- **WB-65/67 (WB-20)** — Tractor/Semitrailer combination with an overall wheelbase of 65 ft or 67 ft (20.4 m).
- **WB-67D (WB-20D)** — Tractor/Semitrailer/Trailer combination with an overall wheelbase of 67 ft (20.4 m).
- **P/T** — Recreational vehicle, car, and camper trailer.

Figure 36-1.J illustrates the turning characteristics for a typical tractor/semitrailer design vehicle and definitions for terms that make up the characteristics. Figure 36-1.K shows the dimensions of commonly used truck tractors. For IDOT’s purposes, the long-haul tractors are used for the WB-65 and WB-67 design vehicles. The city and short haul tractors are used for the remaining multi-unit design vehicles. Figure 36-1.L shows the relationship between the maximum steering angle, effective wheelbase of a tractor, and the centerline turning radius on which the turning paths for combination trucks is based.

Figures 36-1.M through 36-1.U provide vehicular dimensions and turning templates for typical design vehicles. The turning path parameters for the design vehicles in Figures 36-1.M through 36-1.U may vary from the software used for intersection and other types of geometric layout. Vehicle turning software is periodically updated by the software manufacturers to be current with industry standards, while the turning path parameters for the design vehicles are meant to visually represent a turning path. The minimum turning radii shown in the figures are for turns less than 10 mph (15 km/hr).
36-1.08(b) Selection

Figure 36-1.V presents the recommended design vehicles at intersections based on the functional classification of the intersecting highways which the vehicle is turning from and onto. Figure 36-1.W presents the recommended truck type that should be used based on the Illinois “Designated State Truck Route System.” Chapter 43 further discusses the National Truck Network. The design vehicles shown in Figures 36-1.V and/or 36-1.W are for new construction and reconstruction projects. For 3R projects, the design vehicle will be site specific, and it may be a smaller design vehicle than that used for new construction and reconstruction projects.

In addition to Figures 36-1.V and 36-1.W, use the following guidelines when selecting a design vehicle:

1. Minimum Designs. The SU-30 and/or S-BUS-40 design vehicles are generally the smallest vehicles used in the design of State highway intersections. This design reflects that, even in urban residential or sparsely populated rural areas, garbage trucks, delivery trucks, and school buses will be negotiating turns with some frequency. Rural intersections which may serve school bus traffic should, at a minimum, accommodate a turning school bus without encroachment onto the opposing lanes of travel. Intersections of State highways with suburban residential streets should also accommodate, at a minimum an S-BUS-40. Encroachment onto the opposing lanes of travel is permitted, but not desirable. Urban intersections only need to accommodate design vehicles that are expected to use that intersection. See Section 36-2.01 for further discussion on encroachment.

2. Recreational Areas. Recreational areas typically will be designed using the SU design vehicle. This reflects that service vehicles are typically required to maintain the recreational area. Under some circumstances the passenger car with a trailer (P/T) may be the appropriate design vehicle (e.g., campground areas, boat launches).

3. Mixed Use. Some portions of an intersection may be designed with one design vehicle and other portions with another vehicle. For example, it may be desirable to design physical characteristics (e.g., corner islands) for the WB-67 (WB-20) truck but provide painted channelization for the SU design vehicle. This technique can improve safety by providing additional guidance to motorists, bicyclists, and pedestrians at locations where a smaller design vehicle may comprise the majority of usage at an intersection.

4. Turning Template. The intersection design and layout should be checked with an approved computer simulated turning template program or with an actual turning template.

Federal law prohibits limiting the overall length of tractor/semitrailer and tractor/semitrailer/trailer combinations on the National Network; see Section 43-5 for a discussion on the National Network. Thus tractor/semitrailer and tractor/semitrailer/trailer combinations longer than WB-67 are allowed on some Illinois roads without permits, however unless vehicle surveys indicate a need for designing for larger vehicles, designing for WB-67’s is adequate for the facilities shown in Figure 36-1.V.
The Illinois Statutes applied the Federal law to all Class I highways. On Class II highways, the Illinois statutes do not have an overall length limits but limits the length from the front axle to the rear axle to 65 ft (WB-65) on Class II highways.

36-1.09 Pedestrians and Bicyclists

In the design of an intersection, safe and convenient movement of pedestrians and bicyclists shall be considered. Where present, pedestrians and bicyclists should be treated as design users of the intersection and given the same consideration in the design process as the design vehicle. Overly wide intersections can significantly increase the crossing distance for pedestrians and bicyclists, resulting in increased exposure that can lead to higher crash potential for vulnerable users. Additionally, longer signal phase times, more potential pedestrian conflicts with turning vehicles, and lower overall intersection capacity can result with very wide intersections.

To address these issues and improve pedestrian and bicycle accommodation, initially consider ways to minimize the outside return radii and therefore overall intersection size. Further, the geometric layout may incorporate refuge islands, curb extensions, raised medians, special markings added for bicyclists, additional traffic signal actuation devices specifically for pedestrians or bicyclists, or other design features. In general, geometry that reduces vehicle turning speeds will improve non-motorized safety performance. Returns and corner island designs can constrain vehicle speeds while adding bicycle/pedestrian refuge areas. Mountable aprons, to accommodate larger design vehicles while affecting smaller vehicle turning paths, are supported by FHWA and are utilized throughout the U.S. to achieve multi-modal goals and address safety concerns.

Place crosswalks at approximate right angles to traffic movements and at locations where they will provide for maximum visibility while meeting both driver and pedestrian expectations. All sight lines to crosswalks and adjacent pedestrian waiting areas, including those within medians, must be free of high vegetation plantings or other obstructions.

Chapter 58 discusses the application of curb ramps at intersections for individuals with disabilities. Chapter 17 provides several applications for accommodating bicycle lanes and pedestrians through an intersection. Crosswalk lighting, which can be an effective safety countermeasure for pedestrian crashes, is covered in Chapter 56. The majority of pedestrian crashes occur in dark conditions.

36-1.10 Pavement Markings/Reflectorized Markers

See the Bureau of Operations Departmental Policy TRA-14 and use the current edition of the Bureau of Operation’s Traffic Policies and Procedures Manual; Pavement Marking Selection, Installation, and Inspection Manual; the Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices; and the Illinois Highway Standards to select and design the appropriate pavement markings and crosswalks at intersections. Chapter 57 provides general guidelines for the placement of pavement markings and reflectorized markers.
36-1.11 **Intersection Lighting**

The primary objective of highway lighting is to enhance highway safety. Intersection lighting enables the driver to determine the geometry and condition of the intersection at extended distances thereby simplifying the driving task. This in turn increases driver comfort and reduces fatigue which may contribute to highway safety. Chapter 56 discusses the warrants and design criteria for highway and intersection lighting.

36-1.12 **Bus Turnouts**

For design of bus turnouts near intersections, see Chapter 58.
Definitions:

1. **Turning Radius.** The circular arc formed by the turning path radius of the front outside tire of a vehicle. This radius is also described by vehicular manufacturers as the “turning curb radius.”

2. **Centerline Turning Radius (CTR).** The turning radius of the centerline of the front axle of a vehicle with its steering wheels at the steering lock position.

3. **Offtracking.** The difference in the paths of the front and rear wheels of a tractor/semitrailer as it negotiates a turn. The path of the rear tires of a turning truck does not coincide with that of the front tires. This effect is shown in the drawing above.

4. **Swept Path Width.** The amount of roadway width that a truck covers in negotiating a turn and is equal to the amount of off-tracking plus the width of the tractor unit. The most significant dimension affecting the swept path width of a tractor/semitrailer is the distance from the kingpin to the rear trailer axle or axles. The greater this distance is, the greater the swept path width.

5. **Steering Angle.** The average of the angles made by the left and right steering wheels with the longitudinal axis of the vehicle when the wheels are turned to their maximum angle. The Maximum angle controls the minimum turning radius of the vehicle.

6. **Tractor/Trailer Angle.** The angle between adjoining units of a tractor/semitrailer when the combination unit is placed into a turn. This angle is measured between the longitudinal axes of the tractor and trailer as the vehicle turns. The maximum tractor/trailer angle occurs when a vehicle makes a 180 degree turn at the minimum turning radius and is reached slightly beyond the point where a maximum swept path width is achieved.

**TURNING CHARACTERISTICS OF A TYPICAL TRACTOR-SEMITRAILER COMBINATION DESIGN VEHICLE**

*Figure 36-1.J*
DIMENSIONS OF COMMONLY USED TRUCK TRACTORS

FIGURE 36-1.K

COMPUTATION METHOD FOR DETERMINING THE CTR FOR TRACTOR-SEMITRAILER COMBINATION TRUCKS

FIGURE 36-1.L
MINIMUM TURNING PATH OF PASSENGER CAR
(P) DESIGN VEHICLE

Figure 36-1.M
*Note: The 84-passenger school bus is the largest school bus presently manufactured.

MINIMUM TURNING PATH OF 84-PASSENGER SCHOOL BUS (S-BUS) DESIGN VEHICLE

Figure 36-1.N
MINIMUM TURNING PATH OF SINGLE UNIT [SU-30 (SU-9)] DESIGN VEHICLE

Figure 36-1.O
TURNING PATH OF TRACTOR/SEMITRAILER
[WB-40 (WB-12)] DESIGN VEHICLE

Figure 36-1.P
TURNING PATH OF TRACTOR/SEMITRAILER
[WB-50 (WB-15)] DESIGN VEHICLE

Figure 36-1.Q

- Assumed tractor/trailer angle is 56°
- Assumed steering angle is 17°
- Turning radius at centerline of front axle of tractor = CTR

Design Vehicle

Path of Overhang

Path of Left Front Wheel

Path of Right Rear Wheel

CTR = 41'12.50 m

45' (15 m) Min. Turning Radius

17'6 (5.38 m) Min.
*Note: Presently, trailers are manufactured in lengths of 40 ft (12.19 m), 42.5 ft (12.95 m), 45 ft (13.72 m), 48 ft (14.63 m), and 53 ft (16.16 m).

TURNING PATH OF TRACTOR/SEMITRAILER
[WB-55 (WB-17)] DESIGN VEHICLE

Figure 36-1.R
Note: The WB-67 is shown. A shorter wheelbase vehicle, the WB-65, can be created by moving the tandem wheel assembly on the trailer forward by 2 ft.

*Note: Presently, trailers are manufactured in lengths of 40 ft (12.19 m), 42.5 ft (12.95 m), 45 ft (13.72 m), 48 ft (14.63 m), and 53 ft (16.16 m).

TURNING PATH OF TRACTOR/SEMITRAILER [WB-65 AND WB-67 (WB-20)] DESIGN VEHICLE

Figure 36-1.S
TURNING PATH OF TRACTOR/SEMITRAILER/TRAILER
[WB-67D (WB-20D)] DESIGN VEHICLE

FIGURE 36-1.T
MINIMUM TURNING PATH OF PASSENGER CAR AND TRAILER (P/T) DESIGN VEHICLE

Figure 36-1.U

- Assumed steering angle is 21.6°
- Assumed car/trailer angle is 47.2°
- Turning radius at centerline of front axle of = CTR
### SELECTION OF DESIGN VEHICLE AT INTERSECTIONS

(Functional Classification)

**Figure 36-1.V**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>For Turn Made</th>
<th>Design Vehicle &lt;sup&gt;(1)(2)(3)(4)&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Freeway Ramp</td>
<td>WB-67 (WB-20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other Facilities</td>
<td>WB-67 (WB-20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arterial or SRA&lt;sup&gt;(5)&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>WB-65 (WB-20)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collector</td>
<td>WB-55 (WB-17)&lt;sup&gt;*&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local</td>
<td>WB-50 (WB-15)&lt;sup&gt;*&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local (Residential)</td>
<td>S-BUS&lt;sup&gt;*&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collector</td>
<td>WB-55 (WB-17)&lt;sup&gt;*&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local</td>
<td>WB-50 (WB-15)&lt;sup&gt;*&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local (Residential)</td>
<td>S-BUS&lt;sup&gt;*&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collector</td>
<td>WB-55 (WB-17)&lt;sup&gt;*&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local</td>
<td>SU&lt;sup&gt;*&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local (Residential)</td>
<td>S-BUS&lt;sup&gt;*&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collector</td>
<td>WB-55 (WB-17)&lt;sup&gt;*&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local</td>
<td>SU&lt;sup&gt;*&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local (Residential)</td>
<td>S-BUS&lt;sup&gt;*&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>*</sup> With encroachment, a WB-65 (WB-20) vehicle should physically be able to make the turn.

**Notes:**

1. Use this figure for new construction and reconstruction projects.
2. A smaller design vehicle may be considered as a design exception after an investigation of conditions and with justification.
3. For 3R projects, the design vehicle will be site specific with justification.
4. See also Section 36-1.08(b) regarding design vehicle selection.
5. SRA is a Strategic Regional Arterial route.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Highway Type</th>
<th>Design Vehicle</th>
<th>Maximum Length of Trailer Allowed (m)</th>
<th>Maximum Length Kingpin to Center Rear Axle (m)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class I State</td>
<td>WB-67 (WB-20)</td>
<td>53' (16.16 m)</td>
<td>45.5' (13.87 m)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class II State and Local</td>
<td>WB-65 (WB-20)</td>
<td>53' (16.16 m)</td>
<td>45.5' (13.87 m)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-designated State</td>
<td>WB-55 (WB-17)</td>
<td>53' (16.16 m)</td>
<td>42.5' (12.96 m)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-designated Local</td>
<td>WB-50 (WB-15)</td>
<td>Not Specified</td>
<td>Not Specified</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:


2. Any tractor/semitrailer and tractor/semitrailer/trailer vehicle operating on a Class I highway shall have access onto any street or highway for a distance of 1 mile (1.61 km) for the purpose of loading, unloading, and obtaining food, fuel, rest, or repairs, so long there are no signs posted prohibiting such access. Under this condition, the combination truck units allowed access from the Class I highway may be up to 8 ft-6 in. (2.59 m) wide with a 53 foot (16.16 m) long trailer (28.5 ft trailer for tractor/semitrailer/trailer combinations).

3. Any tractor/semitrailer vehicle operating on a Class I or II highway shall have access onto any non-designated street or highway for a distance of five miles (8.05 km) on such streets or highways for the purpose of loading, unloading, and obtaining food, fuel, rest, or repairs, provided there are no signs posted prohibiting such access, and if the route is not being used as a thoroughfare between such designated highways.

4. Local authorities may designate as Class II any highway within their system. Posting of signs for Class II routes is not required; when large vehicles are prohibited from using streets and highways under local jurisdiction posted signs will identify such restrictions. Local agencies are responsible for reporting to the Department all streets and highways under their jurisdiction designated as Class II highways or affirming that they have no such routes. Specific vehicle prohibitions established by local agencies through ordinance or resolution are compiled by the Department and available on the IDOT website.

The statutes referred to above do not imply geometric components such as intersection turn radii or driveway aprons be provided to accommodate trucks without encroachment.

**DESIGN VEHICLE SELECTION**

(Designated State Truck Route System)

*Figure 36-1.W*
36-2 TURNING RADII

Turning radii treatments for intersections are important design elements in that they influence the operation, safety, and construction costs of the intersection. The designer must ensure that the proposed design is compatible with the expected intersection operations.

36-2.01 Design for Right-Turning Vehicles

The following sections present several basic parameters the designer needs to consider in determining the proper pavement edge/curb line for right-turning vehicles.

36-2.01(a) Design Vehicle

Section 36-1.08 discusses the selection of the applicable design vehicle for different intersections. These vehicles are used to determine the pavement edge or curb line. Note that the design vehicle will determine the turning width, vehicular path width or swept-path width. The assumed speed of the vehicle is less than 10 mph (15 km/hr).

Where present, pedestrians and bicyclists should be treated as design users of the intersection and given the same consideration in the design process as the design vehicle.

36-2.01(b) Inside Clearance

Desirably, the selected design vehicle will make the right turn while maintaining approximately a 2 ft (600 mm) clearance from the pavement edge or face of curb.

36-2.01(c) Encroachment

To determine the amount of acceptable encroachment, the designer should evaluate several factors. These would include traffic volumes, one-way or two-way operations, urban/rural location, and the type of traffic control. For turns made onto local facilities, desirably the selected design vehicle will not encroach into the opposing travel lanes. However, this is not always practical or cost effective in urban areas. The designer must evaluate these encroachment conditions against the construction and right-of-way impacts and the effect on the pedestrian crosswalk distance. If these impacts are significant, and if through and/or turning volumes are relatively low, the designer may consider accepting some encroachment of the design vehicle into opposing lanes; see Figure 36-2.D.

The encroachment allowed into adjacent lanes of the road or street onto which the turn is made will depend on the following:

1. Urban. No encroachment should be allowed into opposing lanes for a right-turning vehicle from a side road or street onto a State route.
2. **Rural.** For rural intersections, the selected design vehicle should not encroach into the opposing lanes of traffic.

3. **Multilane Highways.** If there are two or more lanes of traffic in the same direction on the road onto which the turn is made, the selected design vehicle can occupy both travel lanes. Desirably, the right-turning vehicle will be able to make the turn while remaining entirely in the right through lane; see Figure 36-2.C. However, conditions do exist where this is not practical or desirable and can lead to inordinately wide intersections, deficient head-turn angles for right-turning vehicles (see Figure 36-2.E), and excessive pedestrian crossing times. Engineering judgment must be used in creating an intersection design that safely and efficiently accommodates all roadway users.

All intersections of two designated State truck routes should be checked to see if the WB-65 (WB-20) design vehicle can physically make the right-turn without backing up and without impacting curbs, parked cars, utility poles, culvert end sections, mailboxes, traffic control devices, or any other obstructions, regardless of the selected design vehicle or allowable encroachment.

36-2.01(d) **Parking Lanes/Shoulders**

At many intersections, parking lanes and/or shoulders will be available on one or both approach legs. This additional roadway width may be carried through the intersection. The following will apply:

1. **Parking Lanes.** Under restricted conditions, the designer may take advantage of shoulder and/or parking lane to ease the problems of large vehicles turning right at intersections with small radius returns. It will be necessary to restrict the parking a significant distance from the intersection. This area should be delineated with striped pavement markings. Parking should be removed from the intersection according to the **ILMUTCD**.

2. **Paved Shoulders.** At rural intersections, it may be preferable to continue a paved shoulder throughout the radius return. If a shoulder width transition is required, design it according to Figure 36-2.A.

3. **Cubing.** If certain conditions such as drainage requirements, restricted right-of-way, greater delineation, or the desire to minimize off-tracking warrant the use of curbing along the radius return at rural intersections, terminate the curbing at the shoulder edge and transition the curb height as indicated in Figure 36-2.A. Where posted speeds are 50 mph or greater, use a mountable type curb. If a mountable curb is deemed to be ineffective at the specific location in deterring large trucks from making impermissible maneuvers and unwanted encroachments, a barrier curb may be utilized on a case-by-case basis, so long as a design exception is justified by the district and granted by BDE; see Section 31-7.
36-2.01(e)       Pedestrian Considerations

The larger the right-turning radius, the farther pedestrians must walk across the street. This is especially important to persons with disabilities. Therefore, the designer must consider the number and type of pedestrians using an intersection when determining the edge of pavement or curb line design. This may lead to a decision to design a right-turn corner island (small or intermediate) for use as a pedestrian refuge.

36-2.01(f)       Visibility of Traffic Control Devices

In addition to providing pedestrian refuge and reducing pedestrian exposure within the intersection by creating several shorter crossing maneuvers rather than a single, longer pedestrian maneuver, raised corner islands may be desirable to improve motorist visibility to traffic control devices, such as traffic signal posts and stop signs. Raised corner islands should be considered where there is current or proposed presence of large vehicles and/or pedestrians at an intersection, where visibility of traffic control devices may otherwise be limited, or where proposed geometrics through the use of a computer simulated turning template program and engineering analyses otherwise dictate. See Section 36-2.02 for more information regarding the use of corner islands.

36-2.01(g)       Types of Radius Return Designs

Once the designer has determined the basic right-turning parameters (e.g., design vehicle, amount of allowable encroachment, inside clearance, need for corner island), it will be necessary to select the type of turning design for the curb return or pavement edge which will meet these criteria and will fit the intersection constraints.

The simple radius is the easiest to design and construct. However, two-centered or three-centered curves provide a better fit to the transitional turning paths of tractor/semitrailer design vehicles. Because the WB-67, WB-55, or WB-50 (WB-20, WB-17, or WB-15) trucks are allowed on all State highways, the Department has determined that two-centered or three-centered curves are desirable at all major intersections. Note that using these curves may require a corner island to improve visibility of traffic control devices, to reduce pedestrian crossing time exposure, and to provide pedestrian refuge.

Some of the advantages of the two-centered and three-centered curves as compared to the simple radius design include:

- When accommodating a specific design vehicle, they require less intersection pavement than a simple radius design, and especially for angles of turn greater than 90 degrees. For large vehicles, a simple radius is often an unreasonable design unless a corner island is used and, in effect, a turning roadway is provided.
- There are less right-of-way impacts at the intersection corners.
- A simple radius results in greater distances for pedestrians to cross the intersection.
*Note: Only use M-type curb on corner islands.

SHOULDER/CURB AND GUTTER RADIUS RETURN TRANSITIONS

Figure 36-2.A
SUMMARY OF RIGHT-TURN DESIGN ISSUES

Figure 36-2.B
Notes:

1. Figure indicates restricted cross section on arterial route.
2. Assumed steering angle of truck is 31.9°.
3. Turning radius of truck at centerline of front axle = CTR.
4. Corner radius = 30 ft (9.0 m).

RECONSTRUCTION OF LOCAL RESIDENTIAL STREET INTERSECTION
AT MULTILANE ARTERIAL ROUTE
(Right Turn Out of SU Truck)

Figure 36-2.C
Notes:

1. Figure indicates restricted cross section on arterial route.

2. Assumed steering angle of truck is 31.9°.

3. Turning radius of truck at centerline of front axle = CTR.

4. Corner radius = 30 ft (9.0 m).

**RECONSTRUCTION OF LOCAL RESIDENTIAL STREET INTERSECTION AT MULTILANE ARTERIAL ROUTE**
(Right Turn In of SU Truck)

*Figure 36-2.D*
36-2.01(h)  **Turning Template(s)**

To determine the preliminary right-turn design, the designer should use the applicable turning template for the selected design vehicle and speed. Check all turning movements of the final intersection design with the applicable turning templates or with a computer simulated turning template program. If computer simulation is used to determine right-turn design, include the printout with the intersection design study.

36-2.01(i)  **Stop Bar Locations**

See the *Illinois Supplement to the Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (ILMUTCD)* regarding stop bar placement at intersections. Stop bar locations should be checked against the criteria in the ILMUTCD at wide throat intersections. This is especially important where no corner island is used. On multilane approaches or approaches with corner islands, care should be taken in design to ensure the proposed stop bar placement of one lane does not create a line of sight restriction for the adjacent stopping maneuver. See Section 36-2.02(a) and (c) for more information on stop bar placement when using a corner island.

36-2.01(j)  **Summary**

Figure 36-2.B illustrates the many factors that should be evaluated in determining the proper design for right-turns movements at intersections. In summary, the following procedure applies:

1. Select the design vehicle(s) (Section 36-2.01(a)).
2. Determine the acceptable inside clearance (Section 36-2.01(b)).
3. Determine the acceptable encroachment (Section 36-2.01(c)).
4. Consider the benefits of any parking lanes or shoulders (Section 36-2.01(d)).
5. Consider impacts on pedestrians (Section 36-2.01(e)).
6. Consider the visibility of traffic control devices and determine the need for raised corner islands (Section 36-2.01(f)).
7. Design the radius returns (Section 36-2.01(g)).
8. Check all turning movements of all proposed designs with the applicable vehicular turning templates or computer simulated turning template program (Section 36-2.01(h)).
9. Check the location of stop bars (Section 36-2.01(i)).
10. Using this iterative process, revise the design as necessary to accommodate the right-turning vehicle or determine that it is not practical to meet this design because of adverse impacts. If necessary, prepare a design exception request or seek a maximum extent practicable (MEP) determination for all non-compliant items; see Chapter 31.
36-2.01(k)  Local Street Reconstruction

When reconstructing an arterial, the designer often must maintain the existing width on the local street. Figure 36-2.C illustrates the turning path for an SU-30 design vehicle turning out of an existing local street with a 30 ft (9.0 m) radius. Figure 36-2.D illustrates the turning path for an SU-30 design vehicle turning onto an existing local street.

36-2.02  Corner Islands

36-2.02(a)  General Design Considerations

Raised corner islands, although they will require additional long-term maintenance, often provide substantial benefits, especially in urban environments. Corner islands can create positive driver guidance which may be especially advantageous where a tractor/semi-trailer is used as the design vehicle and/or at oblique angle crossing intersections. Corner islands can also help moderate vehicle turning speeds, provide pedestrian and bicyclist refuge areas, and allow for placement and optimal visibility of signs and signalized traffic control devices that may also include pedestrian signal heads and push buttons. Where non-motorized users will be present, corner islands can provide flush surfaces within the depressed sidewalk that can be used as relatively safe waiting areas for these users, while also shortening crossing distances and allowing a reduction in the time allocated for pedestrian movements.

Safety research shows that right-turn crashes may be of greater concern when one or a combination of any of the following factors exist or is proposed; see Figure 36-2.E:

- Right-turn radius return designed for WB-55 design vehicle or greater,
- Intersection angle less than 75 degrees,
- Right-turn angle between 25 and 30 degrees, or greater than 45 degrees,
- Head-turn angle greater than 140 degrees,
- Right-turning volume greater than 250 vph, or right-turn approach AADT greater than 3,125 vpd, or
- Moderate truck volumes (greater than 5%).

The standard corner island design (described in detail in Section 36-2.02(c)) has been shown to improve intersection sight distance by reducing necessary driver head-turn. As compared to past design practice, the standard design lengthens the approach side of the island along the turning roadway while reducing the length along the departure side of the turning roadway. This provides positive guidance for the approaching vehicle, while optimizing the motorist’s line of sight when completing the right-turn maneuver. This standard corner island design is expected to reduce the potential for right-turn crashes and improve intersection safety.
HEAD-TURN ANGLE CONCERN AT CORNER ISLANDS

Figure 36-2.E

During the design process, assess the factors described in this section with the goal of minimizing right-turning crashes. See Figure 36-2.F for design options. Specifically:

- A standard corner island design incorporating the optimum geometrics should typically be implemented upon initial design and construction of those proposed facilities which include a raised corner island.

- Existing locations with a raised corner island should also be considered for retrofit to the standard corner island design whenever intersection improvements are proposed and existing crash data supports this modification.

36-2.02(b) Design Parameters

The type and size of triangular or corner islands will vary according to the angle of intersection, design vehicle, right-turn operation, available right-of-way, and safety considerations. Figure 36-2.G illustrates the typical designs for corner islands. Also consider the following:

1. Island Sides. The sides of the island are controlled by minimum island size and visibility requirements. The sides should not be less than 12 ft (3.6 m) after rounding the corners. If traffic signal posts or pedestrian accommodations are installed within the island, the sides of the island may need increased above minimum.
2. **Island Size.** The minimum island size for rural areas is 100 ft² (9.5 m²). For urban islands, the island area typically should be 75 ft² (7.0 m²) but not less than 50 ft² (4.7 m²). When traffic signal equipment or pedestrian accommodations are present within the island, the island size may need increased significantly above these minimums. When two pedestrian crossing directions need to be accounted for within the depressed portions of the island, an island of significant size must be designed to provide a sufficient size for the remaining raised island portions. Note the island area includes the concrete median surface and the top of the curb.

3. **Flush or Raised-Curb.** For proper delineation of corner islands, under all conditions (e.g., nighttime, rain, fog, snow), the raised-curb design is preferable.

4. **Curbing.** Only use the M-type curb on corner islands. Also consider the following:
   a. Use M-6 (M-15) curb on islands that are located adjacent to a highway with speeds of 45 mph (70 km/hr) or less.
   b. Use M-4 (M-10) curb on islands that are located adjacent to high-speed traffic (50 mph (80 km/hr) or greater). However, use M-6 (M-15) curb on islands where traffic signal supports, sign truss supports, or any other post with a foundation generally larger than a standard highway sign are present. Note that a stop sign is a standard highway sign.
   c. Use M-6.06 (M-15.15) or M-4.06 (M-10.15) concrete curb and gutter on all sides of islands where the island is offset the shoulder width from the edge of the traveled way.

5. **Island Offsets.** On streets with outside curb and gutter, offset the corner island face of curb from the edge of the traveled way according to Figure 36-2.G. In rural areas or for facilities with shoulders, the corner island is offset the shoulder width, but not greater than 8 ft (2.4 m) to the face of curb; see Figure 36-2.H. If a right-turn deceleration lane is provided on a rural facility, offset the corner island face of curb 8 ft (2.4 m) to the edge of pavement along that approach.

6. **Curb Cuts.** When a raised corner island or median is utilized, and a depressed sidewalk curb cut will be provided for accommodation of pedestrians and/or bicyclists, always seek to provide a minimum of 6 ft (1.8 m) of refuge width and include detectable warnings at all crosswalk locations, subject to ADA policy (see Chapter 58).

36-2.02(c) **Design Techniques**

The approach angle for right-turning vehicles is critical in the design of new corner islands or the modification of existing corner islands. If designed without the approach angle in mind, corner island design may impose challenges to the motorist regarding excessive head-turn and reduced sight distance. These challenges in the driving task are further amplified at intersection approaches on heavy skew angles. Figure 36-2.F depicts two options for a standard corner island design that will minimize potentially adverse operating characteristics.
In the design of a corner island, seek to meet or approach a head-turn angle goal of 115 degrees for the line of sight as shown for drivers at the stop bar. To accomplish this, consider the following techniques in developing the proposed geometrics at corner islands:

- Reducing the edge of pavement radius (in conjunction with island modifications),
- Adjusting the stop bar position,
- Reducing the island length adjacent to the mainline roadway,
- Removing or re-designing the raised island, or
- Placing additional pavement markings immediately adjacent to the outside radius, rather than immediately adjacent to the corner island.

These techniques are suggested to provide good approach visibility for drivers of passenger vehicles, while also allowing large trucks to complete the turn without encroaching onto the curb or shoulder.

Note that corner island design is not wholly a standardized design procedure; rather, design customization may be needed for urban and rural applications based on site specific factors and engineering judgment. When implementing the standard corner island design at skewed intersections, meeting the head-turn angle goal often becomes very challenging and designs different from those depicted may be necessary. In urban areas, adjustments to the stop bar locations depicted in Figure 36-2.F may be needed to accommodate pedestrian crosswalks and traffic signal equipment.

![Diagram of standard corner island design options](image)

**STANDARD CORNER ISLAND DESIGN OPTIONS**

*Figure 36-2.F*
Notes:

1. $\mathbb{1}$, $\mathbb{2}$, $\mathbb{3}$ - designates a specific corner of island.

2. Ramp the $\mathbb{1}$ and $\mathbb{2}$ noses of curved corner islands unless the curb function is for the protection of pedestrians, signals, light standards, or sign truss supports.

3. See the IDOT Highway Standards for details of ramping noses.

4. All corner radii are to the face of curb at flowline.

5. Pedestrian accommodations shown are optional based on pedestrian need.

* These dimensions are controlled by the minimum area requirements of the island, as well as guidelines for traffic signal equipment and pedestrian accommodations, when utilized.

** These design elements vary by design vehicle.
36-2.03 Turning Roadways

Where the inner edges of pavements for right turns at intersections are designed to accommodate tractor/semi-trailer combinations or where the desired design permits passenger vehicles to turn at speeds of 15 mph (25 km/hr) or greater, the pavement area at the corner of the intersection may become excessively large for proper control of traffic. To avoid this, a raised corner island is used and the connecting roadway between the two intersection legs is defined as a turning roadway.

36-2.03(a) Guidelines

The need for a turning roadway will be determined on a case-by-case basis. The designer should consider the following guidelines in determining the need for a turning roadway:

1. **Trucks.** A turning roadway is usually required when the selected design vehicle is a tractor/semitrailer combination.

2. **Island Type and Size.** Desirably, the raised corner island size should be at least 100 ft$^2$ (9.0 m$^2$). At a minimum, the island should be at least 100 ft$^2$ (9.0 m$^2$) in rural areas and 50 ft$^2$ (4.5 m$^2$) in urban areas; see Figure 36-2.G.

3. **Level of Service.** A turning roadway can often improve the level of service through the intersection. At signalized intersections, a turning roadway with a free-flow acceleration lane may significantly improve the capacity of the intersection by removing the right-turning vehicles from the signal phasing. Level-of-service criteria are provided in the geometric design tables in Part V, Design of Highway Types, of the BDE Manual.

4. **Crashes.** Consider using a turning roadway with a right-turn lane if there are significant numbers of rear-end type crashes at an intersection. Turning roadways with larger radii, in conjunction with a right-turn lane, will allow vehicles to make the turning movements at higher speeds and, consequently, should reduce these types of accidents. However, where pedestrians are expected to be present it is important to also consider ways to maximize their visibility and safety.

Figure 36-2.H illustrates two options for turning roadway layout. Typically use a two-centered curve for the radius at the intersection. When designing the turning roadway, consider the effects of corner island design on safety (see Section 36-2.02). The High Speed Design is not recommended where pedestrians will be present.
Notes:

1. \( W \) = Width of turning roadway, see Figure 36-2.I.
2. See Figure 36-2.G for details of the corner island design.

TYPICAL TURNING ROADWAY LAYOUT
(Low/Intermediate Speed Design)

Figure 36-2.H
(1 of 2)
Notes:

1. \( W \) = Width of turning roadway, see Figure 36-2.I.
2. See Figure 36-2.G for details of the corner island design.

**TYPICAL TURNING ROADWAY LAYOUT**

*(High Speed Design)*

**Figure 36-2.H**

(2 of 2)
36-2.03(b) **Design Speed**

A turning roadway even at a low design speed (e.g., 10 mph (20 km/hr)) may still provide a significant benefit to turning vehicles regardless of the speed on the approaching highway. Typically, the design speed for a turning roadway will be in the range of 10-20 mph (15-30 km/hr).

36-2.03(c) **Width**

Turning roadway widths are dependent upon the turning radii design, design vehicle selected, angle of turn, design at edges of the turning roadway, and type of operation. Section 36-1.08 provides the criteria for selection of the appropriate design vehicle at an intersection. Turning roadways are designed for one-way operation and are segregated as follows:

1. **Case I.** One-lane with no provisions for passing a stalled vehicle on the traveled way.
2. **Case II.** One-lane with provision for passing a stalled vehicle on the traveled way.
3. **Case III.** Two-lane operation on the traveled way.

Figure 36-2.I presents guidelines for turning roadway widths for various design vehicles based on the above operations. Selection of the appropriate operation will depend on the intersection and will be determined on a case-by-case basis. The following presents several guidelines to consider:

1. **Case I.** For most turning roadway designs, use the Case I widths from Figure 36-2.I. The pavement widths in Figure 36-2.I provide an extra 6 ft (1.8 m) clearance beyond the design vehicle’s swept path. This additional width provides extra room for maneuverability and driver variances.
2. **Case II and III.** Case II and III widths are seldom required on turning roadways. This is due to the relatively short roadway lengths involved. The Case II widths may be appropriate where channelized islands are provided next to through traffic lanes. Case III widths are only applicable where two lanes are used through the turning roadway.
3. **Larger Vehicles.** In selecting the turning roadway width, the designer should also consider the possibility that a larger vehicle may also use the turning roadway. To some extent, the extra 6 ft (1.8 m) clearances in Case I widths will allow for the accommodation of the occasional larger vehicle at a lower speed and with less clearance. For example, a turning roadway designed for a WB-50 (WB-15) with a 100 ft (30 m) radius will still accommodate an occasional WB-55 (WB-17) vehicle. However, it will not accommodate a WB-67 (WB-20) vehicle. If there are a significant number of the larger vehicles using the turning roadway, it should be selected as the design vehicle.
4. **Shoulders.** For shoulder designs adjacent to turning roadways, see Figures 36-2.A and 36-2.H.
5. **Curbing.** Where curb and gutter is provided on the left and/or right side of the turning roadway, add the gutter widths to the widths shown in Figure 36-2.I.
### TURNING ROADWAY WIDTHS

**US Customary**

#### Figure 36-2.I

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Radius on Inner Edge of Pavement, R (ft)</th>
<th>Case I, One-Lane, One-Way Operation, No Provision for Passing a Stalled Vehicle (ft)</th>
<th>Case II, One-Lane, One-Way Operation with Provision for Passing a Stalled Vehicle by Another of the Same Type (ft)</th>
<th>Case III, Two-Lane, One-Way Operation (Same Type Vehicle in Both Lanes) (ft)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Notes:**

1. Only use the turning roadway widths in this figure as a guide and check with a turning template or a computer simulated turning template program.

2. See Section 36-1.08 for dimensions of design vehicles.
### Radius on Inner Edge of Pavement, R (m)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case I, One-Lane, One-Way Operation, No Provision for Passing a Stalled Vehicle (m)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tangent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case II, One-Lane, One-Way Operation with Provision for Passing a Stalled Vehicle by Another of the Same Type (m)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tangent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case III, Two-Lane, One-Way Operation (Same Type Vehicle in Both Lanes) (m)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tangent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:
1. Only use the turning roadway widths in this figure as a guide and check with a turning template or a computer simulated turning template program.
2. See Section 36-1.08 for dimensions of design vehicles.

**TURNING ROADWAY WIDTHS**  
(Metric)  
**Figure 36-2.1**
36-2.03(d) **Horizontal Alignment**

The horizontal alignment for turning roadway design differs from that of open-roadway conditions, which are discussed in Chapter 32. In comparison, turning roadway designs reflect more restrictive field conditions, and less demanding driver expectation and driver acceptance of design limitations. The following assumptions are used to design horizontal alignment for turning roadways:

1. **Curvature Arrangement.** The radii designs discussed in Section 36-2.01 (e.g., simple radius, two or three-centered curves) are also applicable to turning roadways. For most turning roadway designs, a two-centered curve is desirable. A large simple radius can be used where right-of-way is available and where a higher turning speed is desired (e.g., 20-25 mph (30-40 km/hr)).

2. **Superelevation.** Turning roadways are relatively short in length as indicated in Figure 36-2.H. This increases the difficulty of superelevating the roadway. For turning roadways developed with two-centered curves, a low design speed (e.g., 10-20 mph (15-30 km/hr)) is appropriate and the superelevation rate will typically be 2%. The maximum superelevation rate for turning roadways should not exceed 4%. This would apply only where a large simple radius is used. The factors that control the amount of superelevation are the need to meet pavement elevations of the two intersecting roadways, providing for drainage within the turning roadway, and design speed. Selection of the appropriate superelevation rate will be based on field conditions and will be determined on a site-by-site basis.

3. **Superelevation Development.** Figure 36-2.J illustrates a schematic of superelevation development for a turning roadway adjacent to a tangent section of highway and includes both a right-turn lane and an acceleration-lane taper. The actual development will depend upon the practical field conditions combined with a reasonable consideration of the theory behind horizontal curvature. The following criteria should be met:

   - No change in the normal cross slope is necessary up to Section B-B. Here, the width of the right-turn lane is less than 3 ft (1.0 m).
   - At Section C1-C1, the full width of the right-turn lane is obtained and should be sloped at 2.5%. The 2.5% cross slope is carried through to C2-C2.
   - The full width of the turning roadway should be attained at Section D-D. The amount of superelevation at D-D will depend upon the practical field conditions.
   - Beyond Section D-D, rotate the turning roadway pavement as needed to provide the required superelevation for the design speed of the turning roadway.
   - The superelevation treatment for the exiting portion of the turning roadway should be similar to that described for the entering portion. However, the superelevation rate on the turning roadway at the beginning of the acceleration taper should match the cross slope of the merging highway or street plus 0.5%.
SUPERELEVATION DEVELOPMENT OF TURNING ROADWAY
(High Speed Design - Mainline on Tangent or Curved to the Right)

Figure 36-2.J
Figure 36-2.K illustrates an existing situation where the mainline curves to the left and away from the crossroad. The designer should make every effort to avoid designing intersections on a curve where superelevation is needed. If this is not practical, the designer can compensate for this problem by proposing the use of a parallel right-turn deceleration lane prior to the turning roadway as shown in Figure 36-2.K.

4. **Cross Slope Rollover.** Figure 36-2.L presents the maximum allowable algebraic difference in the cross slopes between the mainline and the right-turn lane that precedes the turning roadway. In Figures 36-2.J and 36-2.K, this criterion applies between Section A-A and Section D-D. This likely will be a factor only for a superelevated mainline to the left.

5. **Minimum Radius.** The minimum turning roadway radii are based on the design speed, side-friction factors, and superelevation rate. Figure 36-2.M presents minimum radii for various turning roadway conditions.

### 36-2.03(e) Deceleration/Acceleration Lanes

Consider the following guidelines for using an acceleration or deceleration lane with turning roadways:

1. **Deceleration Lane Guidelines.** Consider the following guidelines for including a deceleration lane prior to the turning roadway:
   
   a. **Turning Roadway Design Speed.** A right-turn deceleration lane may be considered where the turning roadway design speed is more than 20 mph (30 km/hr) lower than that of the mainline design speed.
   
   b. **Storage Length.** A right-turn deceleration lane may be beneficial at signalized intersections where the through lane storage may limit access to the turning roadway. In these cases, the deceleration lane should extend upstream beyond the through lane storage requirements.

2. **Acceleration Lane Guidelines.** Consider the following guidelines for including an acceleration lane after the turning roadway:
   
   a. **Traffic Condition.** Consider providing an acceleration lane where it is desirable to provide a free-flowing traffic merge. The acceleration lane should not be preceded by a stop or yield condition.
   
   b. **Traffic Volumes.** Consider providing an acceleration lane where the turning traffic must merge with the through traffic of a high-speed, high-volume facility and/or where there is a high volume of trucks turning onto the mainline.
   
   c. **Sight Distance.** Acceleration lanes may be considered if there is inadequate sight distance available to allow the driver to safely merge with the mainline facility.
SUPERELEVATION DEVELOPMENT OF TURNING ROADWAY
(High Speed Design- Mainline Curved to the Left)

Figure 36-2.K
### US Customary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Design Speed of Turning Roadway Curve (mph)</th>
<th>Rollover (Algebraic Difference) in Cross Slope at Crossover Line (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Desirable Maximum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-20</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25-30</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;30</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Metric

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Design Speed of Turning Roadway Curve (km/hr)</th>
<th>Rollover (Algebraic Difference) in Cross Slope at Crossover Line (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Desirable Maximum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20-30</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40-50</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;50</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Values apply between the traveled way and the right-turn lane for turning roadways.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Turning Roadway Design Speed (mph)</th>
<th>Assumed Maximum Comfortable Side Friction (f)</th>
<th>Assumed Superelevation (e)</th>
<th>Calculated Radius (ft)</th>
<th>Design Radius (R₁) (ft)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>0.38</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>16.7</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3%</td>
<td>16.3</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4%</td>
<td>15.9</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>0.32</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>44.1</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3%</td>
<td>42.9</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4%</td>
<td>41.7</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>0.27</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>92.0</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3%</td>
<td>88.9</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4%</td>
<td>86.0</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>0.23</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>166.7</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3%</td>
<td>160.3</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4%</td>
<td>154.3</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>0.20</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>272.7</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3%</td>
<td>260.9</td>
<td>260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4%</td>
<td>250.0</td>
<td>250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>0.18</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>408.3</td>
<td>410</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3%</td>
<td>388.9</td>
<td>390</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4%</td>
<td>371.2</td>
<td>375</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>0.16</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>595.6</td>
<td>595</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3%</td>
<td>561.4</td>
<td>560</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4%</td>
<td>533.3</td>
<td>535</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Turning Roadway Design Speed (km/hr)</th>
<th>Assumed Maximum Comfortable Side Friction (f)</th>
<th>Assumed Superelevation (e)</th>
<th>Calculated Radius (m)</th>
<th>Design Radius (R₁) (m)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>0.35</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>8.5</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3%</td>
<td>8.3</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4%</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>0.28</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>23.6</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3%</td>
<td>22.9</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4%</td>
<td>22.1</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>0.23</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>50.4</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3%</td>
<td>48.5</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4%</td>
<td>46.7</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>0.19</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>93.7</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3%</td>
<td>89.5</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4%</td>
<td>85.6</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>0.17</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>149.2</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3%</td>
<td>141.7</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4%</td>
<td>135.0</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** For design speeds greater than 45 mph (60 km/hr), use open-roadway conditions; see Chapter 32.

**MINIMUM RADII FOR TURNING ROADWAYS**

**Figure 36-2.M**
d. **Right-Turn vs. Left-Turn Lanes.** Right-turn acceleration lanes are more common than left-turn acceleration lanes. Left-turn acceleration lanes can be considered only after an engineering study has been completed and approved by BDE.

3. **Deceleration Lane Design.** For guidance on the design of right-turn deceleration lanes, see Section 36-3.02.

4. **Acceleration Lane Design.** Consider the following when designing an acceleration lane:

   a. **Type.** Design acceleration lanes at intersections in the same manner as for interchange ramps using the taper design; see Section 37-6.02. Under some circumstances, a parallel-lane design may be more appropriate (e.g., steep upgrade, large volume of trucks). Parallel-lane design criteria are presented in the current edition of the AASHTO *A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets*.

   b. **Lengths.** Right-turn acceleration lanes should meet the criteria presented in Figure 36-2.N. The “controlling curve” at an intersection is the design speed of the turning roadway or the speed at which a vehicle can make the right turn. The acceleration distance from Figure 36-2.N should be adjusted for grades using the factors presented in Figure 36-2.O. Where there is a significant number of turning trucks, the designer may consider lengthening the acceleration lane to account for their longer acceleration distances.

   c. **Taper.** See Figure 36-2.N for the taper length distance to be provided at the end of the acceleration lane.

36-2.04 **Left-Turn Control Radii**

For left turns, the motorist generally has a guide at the beginning and end of the turn and an open intersection in the middle. Therefore, the precise alignment of a two-centered or three-centered curve is generally not applicable. Simple curves are typically used for left-turn control radii. Occasionally, a two-centered curve may be desirable to accommodate the off-tracking of large vehicles provided the second curve has a larger radius.

The design values for left-turn control radii are usually a function of the design vehicle, angle of intersection, number of lanes, and median widths. For roadways intersecting at approximately 90 degrees, radii of 50 ft to 80 ft (15 m to 24 m) should typically satisfy all controlling factors. If center divisional islands are present, select control radii so that the nose of each divisional island is no closer than 4 ft (1.2 m) nor greater than 10 ft (3.0 m) from the edge of the traveled way of the intersecting highway. The nose location is also affected by the selected nose radii. For additional guidance on median openings and median nose designs, see Section 36-4.04.

Left-turn control radii for dual-lane turning movements should be larger than those indicated for the single-lane design. See Section 36-3.05 for additional design details.
### Design Lengths for Acceleration Lanes

**Design Speed of Highway (mph)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Design Speed of Highway (mph)</th>
<th>Speed Reached at End of Full Lane Width (mph) ($V_a$)</th>
<th>Length of Taper (ft)</th>
<th>$L = $ Length of Acceleration Lane Excluding Taper (ft)$^\Phi$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>135</td>
<td>180 140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>155</td>
<td>280 220 160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>175</td>
<td>360 300 270 210 120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>560 490 440 380 280 160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>220</td>
<td>720 660 610 550 450 350 130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>240</td>
<td>960 900 810 780 670 550 320</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>265</td>
<td>1200 1140 1100 1020 910 800 550 320</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>285</td>
<td>1410 1350 1310 1220 1120 1000 770</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>310</td>
<td>1620 1560 1520 1420 1350 1230 1000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

![Parallel Type](image1.png)  
![Taper Type](image2.png)

**Notes:**

1. These values are for grades 3% or less. See Figure 36-2.O for steeper upgrades or downgrades.

2. See Figure 36-2.M for radii of turning roadways.

3. The acceleration lengths are calculated from the distance needed for a passenger car to accelerate from the average running speed of the entrance curve to reach a speed ($V_a$) of approximately 5 mph below the average running speed on the mainline.

4. Length of taper approximates 3 seconds travel time at the design speed.

DESIGN LENGTHS FOR ACCELERATION LINES

(Passenger Cars)

(US Customary)
Figure 36-2.N

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Design Speed of Highway (km/hr)</th>
<th>Speed Reached at End of Full Lane Width (km/hr) ($V_a$)</th>
<th>Length of Taper (m)</th>
<th>L = Length of Acceleration Lane Excluding Taper (m)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>345</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>430</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For Design Speed of Turning Roadway (km/hr)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stop</th>
<th>20</th>
<th>30</th>
<th>40</th>
<th>50</th>
<th>60</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For Average Running Speed (km/hr) ($V_a'$)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>0</th>
<th>20</th>
<th>28</th>
<th>35</th>
<th>42</th>
<th>51</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:

1. These values are for grades 3% or less. See Figure 36-2.O for steeper upgrades or downgrades.

2. See Figure 36-2.M for radii of turning roadways.

3. The acceleration lengths are calculated from the distance needed for a passenger car to accelerate from the average running speed of the entrance curve to reach a speed ($V_a$) of 10 km/hr below the average running speed on the mainline.

4. Length of taper approximates 3 seconds travel time at the design speed.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Design Speed of Highway (mph)</th>
<th>Difference of Length on Grade to Length on Level</th>
<th>All Speeds</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Design Speed of Acceleration Lane (mph)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.01% to 4.00% Upgrade</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>1.30</td>
<td>1.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>1.30</td>
<td>1.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>1.30</td>
<td>1.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>1.35</td>
<td>1.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>1.40</td>
<td>1.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>1.45</td>
<td>1.55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>1.50</td>
<td>1.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.01% to 6% Upgrade</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>1.50</td>
<td>1.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>1.50</td>
<td>1.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>1.50</td>
<td>1.70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>1.60</td>
<td>1.80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>1.70</td>
<td>1.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>1.85</td>
<td>2.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>2.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.01% to 6% Downgrade</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:

1. Where an acceleration lane is proposed on a grade greater than 3%, select a length of lane from Figure 36-2.L and multiply that value by the ratio obtained from above to determine the design length on grade.

2. No adjustment is needed on grades 3% or less.

3. The “grade” in the table is the average grade measured over the distance for which the acceleration length applies.
### Design Speed of Highway (km/hr)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Design Speed of Acceleration Lane (km/hr)</th>
<th>Difference of Length on Grade to Length on Level</th>
<th>All Speeds</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3.01% to 4.00% Upgrade</td>
<td>3.01% to 4.00% Downgrade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>1.3 1.4 1.4 — —</td>
<td>0.70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>1.3 1.4 1.4 1.5 —</td>
<td>0.65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>1.4 1.5 1.5 1.5 1.6</td>
<td>0.65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>1.4 1.5 1.5 1.5 1.6</td>
<td>0.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>1.5 1.6 1.7 1.7 1.8</td>
<td>0.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>1.5 1.6 1.7 1.7 1.8</td>
<td>0.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.01% to 6% Upgrade</td>
<td>4.01% to 6% Downgrade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>1.5 1.5 — — —</td>
<td>0.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>1.5 1.6 1.7 — —</td>
<td>0.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>1.5 1.7 1.9 1.8 —</td>
<td>0.55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>1.6 1.8 2.0 2.1 2.2</td>
<td>0.55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>1.7 1.9 2.2 2.4 2.5</td>
<td>0.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>2.0 2.2 2.6 2.8 3.0</td>
<td>0.50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Notes:

1. Where an acceleration lane is proposed on a grade greater than 3%, select a length of lane from Figure 36-2.L and multiply that value by the ratio obtained from above to determine the design length on grade.

2. No adjustment is needed on grades 3% or less.

3. The “grade” in the table is the average grade measured over the distance for which the acceleration length applies.

---

**GRADE ADJUSTMENTS FOR ACCELERATION**

(Passenger Cars)

(Metric)

**Figure 36-2.O**
36-3 AUXILIARY TURN LANES

When turning maneuvers for left- and right-turning vehicles occur from the through travel lanes, it typically disrupts the flow of through traffic. This is especially true on high-volume highways. To minimize potential conflicts and to improve the level of service and safety, the use of auxiliary turn lanes may be warranted for intersections.

36-3.01 Turn Lane Guidelines

36-3.01(a) Right-Turn Lane Warrants

The use of right-turn lanes at intersections can significantly improve operations. Consider using an exclusive right-turn lane for the following:

- at any unsignalized intersection on a two-lane urban or rural highway that satisfies the criteria in Figure 36-3.A;
- at any unsignalized intersection on a high-speed, four-lane urban or rural highway that satisfies the criteria in Figure 36-3.B;
- on expressways at all public road intersections where the current ADT on the side road is greater than 250;
- at any intersection where a capacity analysis determines a right-turn lane is necessary to meet the level-of-service criteria;
- at any signalized intersections where the right-turning volume is greater than 150 vph and where there is greater than 300 vphpl on the mainline;
- for uniformity of intersection design along the highway if other intersections have right-turn lanes;
- at any intersection where the mainline is curved to the left and where the mainline curve requires superelevation;
- at railroad crossings where the railroad is located close to the intersection and a right-turn lane would be desirable to efficiently move through traffic on the parallel roadway; or
- at any intersection where the crash experience, existing traffic operations, sight distance restrictions (e.g., intersection beyond a crest vertical curve), or engineering judgment indicates a significant conflict related to right-turning vehicles.
Note: For highways with a design speed below 50 mph (80 km/hr), with a DHV in one direction of less than 300, and where right turns are greater than 40, an adjustment should be used. To read the vertical axis of the chart, subtract 20 from the actual number of right turns.

Example

Given:
- Design Speed = 35 mph (60 km/hr)
- DHV (in one direction) = 250 vph
- Right Turns = 100 vph

Problem: Determine if a right-turn lane is warranted.

Solution: To read the vertical axis, use 100 - 20 = 80 vph. The figure indicates that right-turn lane is not necessary, unless other factors (e.g., high crash rate) indicate a lane is needed.
GUIDELINES FOR RIGHT-TURN LANES AT UNSIGNALIZED INTERSECTION ON FOUR-LANE HIGHWAYS
(Design Speed of 50 mph (80 km/hr) or Greater)

Figure 36-3.B

Note: For speeds less than 50 mph (80 km/hr), see Section 36-3.01(a).
36-3.01(b)  **Left-Turn Lane Warrants**

The accommodation of left turns is often the critical factor in proper intersection design. Left-turn lanes can significantly improve both the level of service and intersection safety. Always use an exclusive left-turn lane at all intersections on divided urban and rural highways with a median wide enough to accommodate a left-turn lane, regardless of traffic volumes. Consider using an exclusive left-turn lane for the following:

- at any unsignalized intersection on a two-lane urban or rural highway that satisfies the criteria in Figures 36-3.C, D, E, F, or G;
- at any signalized intersection where the left-turning volume is equal to or greater than 75 vph for a single turn lane or 300 vph for a dual turn lane;
- at any intersection where a capacity analysis determines a left-turn lane is necessary to meet the level-of-service criteria, including dual left-turn lanes;
- for uniformity of intersection design along the highway if other intersections have left-turn lanes (i.e., to satisfy driver expectancy); or
- at any intersection where the crash experience, traffic operations, sight distance restrictions (e.g., intersection beyond a crest vertical curve), or engineering judgment indicates a significant conflict related to left-turning vehicles.
VOLUME GUIDELINES FOR LEFT-TURN LANES AT UNSIGNALIZED INTERSECTIONS ON TWO-LANE HIGHWAYS
(60 mph Design Speed)

Figure 36-3.C

Instructions:
1. The family of curves represent the percent of left turns in the advancing volume ($V_A$). The designer should locate the curve for the actual percentage of left turns. When this is not an even increment of five, the designer should estimate where the curve lies.

2. Read $V_A$ and $V_0$ into the chart and locate the intersection of the two volumes.

3. Note the location of the point in #2 relative to the curve in #1. If the point is to the right of the curve, then a left-turn lane should be considered. If the point is to the left of the curve, then a left-turn lane is not warranted based on traffic volumes.

$V_A = \text{Total advancing traffic volume which includes all turning traffic}$

$V_0 = \text{Total opposing traffic volume which includes all turning traffic}$
Figure 36-3.C

VOLUME GUIDELINES FOR LEFT-TURN LANES AT UNSIGNALIZED INTERSECTIONS ON TWO-LANE HIGHWAYS
(100 km/hr Design Speed)

Instructions:
1. The family of curves represent the percent of left turns in the advancing volume (V_A). The designer should locate the curve for the actual percentage of left turns. When this is not an even increment of five, the designer should estimate where the curve lies.
2. Read V_A and V_O into the chart and locate the intersection of the two volumes.
3. Note the location of the point in #2 relative to the curve in #1. If the point is to the right of the curve, then a left-turn lane should be considered. If the point is to the left of the curve, then a left-turn lane is not warranted based on traffic volumes.
VOLUME GUIDELINES FOR LEFT-TURN LANES AT UNSIGNALIZED INTERSECTIONS ON TWO-LANE HIGHWAYS
(55 mph Design Speed)

Figure 36-3.D
VOLUME GUIDELINES FOR LEFT-TURN LANES AT UNSIGNALIZED INTERSECTIONS ON TWO-LANE HIGHWAYS
(90 km/hr Design Speed)

Figure 36-3.D

1. The family of curves represent the percent of left turns in the advancing volume ($V_A$). The designer should locate the curve for the actual percentage of left turns. When this is not an even increment of five, the designer should estimate where the curve lies.

2. Read $V_A$ and $V_O$ into the chart and locate the intersection of the two volumes.

3. Note the location of the point in #2 relative to the curve in #1. If the point is to the right of the curve, then a left-turn lane should be considered. If the point is to the left of the curve, then a left-turn lane is not warranted based on traffic volumes.

$V_A =$ Total advancing traffic volume which includes all turning traffic

$V_O =$ Total opposing traffic volume which includes all turning traffic
VOLUME GUIDELINES FOR LEFT-TURN LANES AT UNSIGNALIZED INTERSECTIONS ON TWO-LANE HIGHWAYS
(50 mph Design Speed)

Figure 36-3.E

Left-Turn Treatment Should be Considered

Instructions:
1. The family of curves represent the percent of left turns in the advancing volume ($V_A$). The designer should locate the curve for the actual percentage of left turns. When this is not an even increment of five, the designer should estimate where the curve lies.
2. Read $V_A$ and $V_D$ into the chart and locate the intersection of the two volumes.
3. Note the location of the point in #2 relative to the curve in #1. If the point is to the right of the curve, then a left-turn lane should be considered. If the point is to the left of the curve, then a left-turn lane is not warranted based on traffic volumes.

\[ V_A = \text{Total advancing traffic volume which includes all turning traffic} \]
\[ V_D = \text{Total opposing traffic volume which includes all turning traffic} \]
VOLUMES GUIDELINES FOR LEFT-TURN LANELS AT UNSIGNALIZED INTERSECTIONS ON TWO-LANE HIGHWAYS
(80 km/hr Design Speed)

Figure 36-3.E
VOLUME GUIDELINES FOR LEFT-TURN LANES AT UNSIGNALIZED INTERSECTIONS ON TWO-LANE HIGHWAYS (45 mph Design Speed)

Figure 36-3.F

Instructions:
1. The family of curves represent the percent of left turns in the advancing volume ($V_A$). The designer should locate the curve for the actual percentage of left turns. When this is not an even increment of five, the designer should estimate where the curve lies.
2. Read $V_A$ and $V_0$ into the chart and locate the intersection of the two volumes.
3. Note the location of the point in #2 relative to the curve in #1. If the point is to the right of the curve, then a left-turn lane should be considered. If the point is to the left of the curve, then a left-turn lane is not warranted based on traffic volumes.

$V_A = \text{Total advancing traffic volume which includes all turning traffic}$

$V_0 = \text{Total opposing traffic volume which includes all turning traffic}$
**Instructions:**

1. The family of curves represent the percent of left turns in the advancing volume ($V_A$). The designer should locate the curve for the actual percentage of left turns. When this is not an even increment of five, the designer should estimate where the curve lies.

2. Read $V_A$ and $V_0$ into the chart and locate the intersection of the two volumes.

3. Note the location of the point in #2 relative to the curve in #1. If the point is to the right of the curve, then a left-turn lane should be considered. If the point is to the left of the curve, then a left-turn lane is not warranted based on traffic volumes.

**Figure 36-3.F**

**VOLUME GUIDELINES FOR LEFT-TURN LANES AT UNSIGNALED INTERSECTIONS ON TWO-LANE HIGHWAYS**

(70 km/hr Design Speed)
VOLUME GUIDELINES FOR LEFT-TURN LANES AT UNSIGNALIZED INTERSECTIONS ON TWO-LANE HIGHWAYS (40 mph Design Speed)

Figure 36-3.G

\[ V_A = \text{Total advancing traffic volume which includes all turning traffic} \]
\[ V_O = \text{Total opposing traffic volume which includes all turning traffic} \]

Instructions:
1. The family of curves represent the percent of left turns in the advancing volume \( (V_A) \). The designer should locate the curve for the actual percentage of left turns. When this is not an even increment of five, the designer should estimate where the curve lies.
2. Read \( V_A \) and \( V_O \) into the chart and locate the intersection of the two volumes.
3. Note the location of the point in \#2 relative to the curve in \#1. If the point is to the right of the curve, then a left-turn lane should be considered. If the point is to the left of the curve, then a left-turn lane is not warranted based on traffic volumes.
VOLUME GUIDELINES FOR LEFT-TURN LANES AT UNSIGNALIZED INTERSECTIONS ON TWO-LANE HIGHWAYS
(60 km/hr Design Speed)

Figure 36-3.G
36-3.02 Turn Lane Design Parameters

36-3.02(a) Turn Lane Widths

The width of the turn lane should be determined relative to the functional class, urban/rural location, and project scope of work (new construction, reconstruction, 3R). Part V, Design of Highway Types, of the BDE Manual presents the applicable widths for auxiliary lanes based on these criteria. Desirably, turn-lane widths should be 12 ft (3.6 m) or a minimum of 11 ft (3.3 m). However, for 3R projects, lane widths as narrow as 10 ft (3.0 m) are allowed for urban auxiliary lanes or through lanes on non-designated truck routes; see Chapter 49. The geometric design tables in Part V also provide criteria for the applicable shoulder widths adjacent to auxiliary lanes. In general, the minimum shoulder widths adjacent to a turn lane with shoulders should be 4 ft (1.2 m). For curbed sections, the minimum width of the gutter adjacent to the turn lane should be 6 in. to 24 in. (150 mm to 600 mm), with drainage requirements usually dictating the appropriate width.

36-3.02(b) Turn Lane Lengths

Desirably, the length of a right- or left-turn lane at an intersection should allow for both safe vehicular deceleration and storage of turning vehicles outside of the through lanes. However, this is often not practical. The length of auxiliary lanes will be determined by a combination of its taper length (LT), deceleration length (LD), and storage length (LS). For urban areas, the functional length will be the taper length plus the storage length, or the deceleration length that includes the taper length, whichever is larger. For rural areas, typically the functional length will be the deceleration length that includes the taper length. In most high-speed, low-volume rural situations, the storage length will not be a controlling factor. Figure 36-3.H illustrates a schematic of auxiliary lanes at an intersection.

The following discusses IDOT criteria for turn lane lengths:

1. **Taper.** The entrance taper into the turn lane may be either a straight or a reverse curve taper. Always use the straight taper across bridges for ease of construction. Figure 36-3.I provides the recommended taper rates for a straight or reverse curve taper. Where the highway is on a curved alignment, the taper of the turn lane should be more pronounced than usual to ensure that the through motorists are not inadvertently directed into the turn lane. This is accomplished by shortening the taper length. Where the entrance taper is shortened, ensure that the overall deceleration distance from Figure 36-3.I is still provided for the turn lane.

2. **Deceleration.** For rural facilities, the deceleration distance (LD) should meet the criteria presented in Figure 36-3.I. The following will apply:
   a. **Design Speed.** The deceleration length will depend upon the mainline design speed and the proposed type of operation at the end of the turn lane. These
design speeds are provided in the geometric design tables in *Part V, Design of Highway Types*.

b. **Location.** The deceleration distance includes the taper lengths. For left turns, the deceleration distance is usually measured beginning at the end of the left-turn control radii. For right turns, the deceleration distance may be set at either one of two locations; see Figure 36-3.H. At intersections with minor public roads (e.g., frontage roads, service drives, local roads with current ADT volumes less than 400), a design speed of 50 mph (80 km/hr) may be used to determine the deceleration length.

c. **Strategic Regional Arterials (SRA).** For SRA routes, the minimum storage length should be 150 ft (45 m).

d. **Grades.** Where grades are greater than 3%, adjust the deceleration distance using the factors in Figure 36-3.I.

e. **Urban.** These distances are desirable on urban facilities; however, this is not always feasible. Under restricted urban conditions, deceleration may have to be accomplished entirely within the travel lane. For these cases, the length of full-width turn lane will be based solely on providing adequate vehicular storage (i.e., \( L_D = 0.0 \) ft (0.0 m)).

f. **Trucks.** Where it is determined that a turn lane will be used by a large number of trucks, increase the length of the deceleration distance by approximately 30%. This will compensate for the braking constraints of large trucks.
Note: The schematic of the major road (free flowing) also applies to all legs of a signalized intersection.

Key: \( L_T \) = Taper length  
\( L_D \) = Deceleration length  
\( L_S \) = Storage length

See Section 36-3.02(b) for additional guidance.

TYPICAL AUXILIARY LANES AT AN INTERSECTION

Figure 36-3.H
### DECELERATION DISTANCES FOR TURNING LANES

**Figure 36-3.1**

**US Customary**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Design Speed of Highway (mph)</th>
<th>Assumed Running Speed (mph)(1)</th>
<th>Length of Taper (ft)</th>
<th>Stop Condition</th>
<th>Speed Reduced to (mph)</th>
<th>Total Length of Deceleration Lane Including Taper Length (ft)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>135</td>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>155</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>175</td>
<td></td>
<td>25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>200</td>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>220</td>
<td></td>
<td>35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>240</td>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>265</td>
<td></td>
<td>45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>285</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>310</td>
<td></td>
<td>55</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Metric**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Design Speed of Highway (km/hr)</th>
<th>Assumed Running Speed (km/hr) (1)</th>
<th>Length of Taper (m)</th>
<th>Stop Condition</th>
<th>Speed Reduced to (km/hr)</th>
<th>Total Length of Deceleration Lane Including Taper Length (m)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>45</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>60</td>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>70</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>75</td>
<td></td>
<td>60</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>85</td>
<td></td>
<td>70</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>90</td>
<td></td>
<td>80</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Grade Adjustment Factors (2)

**Downgrade**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Adjustments</th>
<th>Factors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6.00% to 5.00%</td>
<td>4.99% to 4.00%</td>
<td>3.99% to 3.01%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.35</td>
<td>1.28</td>
<td>1.20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Upgrade**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Adjustments</th>
<th>Factors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0% to 3.00%</td>
<td>3.01% to 3.99%</td>
<td>4.00% to 4.99%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>0.90</td>
<td>0.85</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1) Average running speed assumed for calculations.

(2) Ratio from this table multiplied by the length provided above will yield the total deceleration length adjusted for grade. Adjustment factors apply to all design speeds and are added to the tangent or storage length.
3. **Storage Length (Signalized Intersections).** The storage length \( L_S \) for turn lanes should be sufficient to store the number of vehicles likely to accumulate during the red phase of the signal cycle in the design hour. The designer should consider the following in determining the recommended storage lengths for signalized intersections:

   a. Determine the distance using the criteria for signalized intersections in the *Highway Capacity Manual* and Highway Capacity Software, or use the following formula:

   
   \[
   \text{Storage Length (ft)} = \frac{(1 - G/C)(DHV)(1 + \frac{\%\text{trucks}}{100})(2 \times 25)}{(# \text{ cycles per hour})(# \text{ traffic lanes})}
   \]

   \[
   \text{Storage Length (m)} = \frac{(1 - G/C)(DHV)(1 + \frac{\%\text{trucks}}{100})(2 \times 7.5)}{(# \text{ cycles per hour})(# \text{ traffic lanes})}
   \]

   *Equation 36-3.1 (US Customary)*

   *Equation 36-3.1 (Metric)*

   where:
   
   \( G = \) green time (sec)
   
   \( = g(\text{protected}) + g(\text{unopposed/permited}) \) time values from HCM analysis (sec)
   
   \( C = \) cycle length (sec)
   
   \( DHV = \) Design Hourly Volume (vph) for turn lane

   b. Where right-turns-on-red are permitted or where separate right-turn signal phases are provided, the length of the right-turn lane may be reduced due to less accumulation of turning vehicles. The storage length \( L_S \) needed for a separate right-turn lane is measured from the stop bar for the right-turning roadway; see Figure 36-3.H.

   c. At signalized intersections, the designer should also consider that entry into right- and left-turn lanes may be blocked by the signal storage needs of the adjacent through lanes. If this occurs, provide longer lengths of turn lanes.

4. **Storage Length (Unsignalized Intersections).** To determine the minimum storage length for unsignalized intersections, complete an unsignalized intersection capacity analysis based on guidance provided in the *Highway Capacity Manual* and output provided by Highway Capacity Software. Then utilize the vehicle queuing information from the analysis output, length of a typical vehicle, and estimation of heavy vehicles at the intersection to determine the expected storage length.
5. **Minimum Turn Lane Length.** With safety improvement or 3R type projects, the full width length of the right- or left-turn lanes may be 115 ft (35 m) plus the taper length.

### 36-3.03 Left-Turn Lane Design

#### 36-3.03(a) General Criteria

In addition to the criteria for left-turn lane widths and lengths discussed in Section 36-3.02, the designer should consider the following general criteria:

1. **Transition Areas.** Do not locate left-turn lanes within any portion of a channelized approach island which is transitional in width. Allow the median width to be fully developed before beginning any additional tapers. If at all possible, refrain from placing tapers within the limits of another taper.


3. **Offset Turn Lanes.** Providing an offset design ensures that opposing left-turning motorists can see past one another to view oncoming through traffic. Offset left-turn lanes can be either a parallel or tapered type.

4. **Indirect Turns.** Where operational or safety concerns preclude the use of typical left-turn lanes, the designer may consider the use of indirect left turns or jug handles that cross the mainline or intersect the crossroad at a different location. Because these require special consideration and treatment, they must be developed in consultation with BDE.

5. **Opposing Left-Turning Traffic.** If simultaneous and opposing left-turn lanes are proposed, the designer must ensure that there is sufficient space for all turning movements. Desirably, the separation between pavement markings should be 10 ft (3.0 m). If space is unavailable, it will be necessary to alter the signal phasing to allow the two directions of turning traffic to move through the intersection on separate phases. See Section 36-3.05 for additional guidance.

6. **Opposing Through Traffic.** Where more than two through traffic lanes will oppose the movement from a left-turn lane, the left-turns should be operated only as a protected movement. This is because crash issues can result from permitted phasing as left-turning drivers can have difficulty processing approaching vehicles from more than two oncoming lanes.
Approach Taper

12' - 14' (3.6 m - 4.2 m)

Left-Turn Lane

Storage Length

$ L_T = \text{Taper} $

Approach Taper

Alternative design is used when there is no probability of a 3rd-lane cross section in the near future.

### Approach Taper Rates for Flush Channelization

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Posted Speed (mph)</th>
<th>Design Speed</th>
<th>Approach Taper Rates</th>
<th>Left-Turn Lane</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$ \geq 50 $</td>
<td>50 mph (80 km/h)</td>
<td>50:1</td>
<td>40:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>45 mph (70 km/h)</td>
<td>45:1</td>
<td>35:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40/35</td>
<td>40 mph (60 km/h)</td>
<td>40:1</td>
<td>30:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$ \leq 30 $</td>
<td>30 mph (50 km/h)</td>
<td>35:1</td>
<td>25:1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Storage lengths may be increased if necessary.

**Flush Channelized Islands at Isolated Rural or Urban Intersections**
(Safety Improvement or 3R Projects)

Figure 36-3.J
Note: Paved shoulders through the intersection area should be a minimum of 4 ft (1.2 m) wide.

FLUSH CHANNELIZED ISLANDS AT AN ISOLATED, HIGH-SPEED RURAL INTERSECTION
(New Construction/Reconstruction Projects)

Figure 36-3.K
At isolated intersections, transition the pavement to an undivided cross section according to the guidelines shown in the IDOT publication “Transitional Approaches to Channelized Intersections”, Figure 36-3k, and Section 36-4.03.

For curb & gutter selection, See Section 34-2.04.

Reverse Curve Taper

See Section 36-3.02 for left-turn lane lengths.

In urban or suburban areas, use curb & gutter along the outside edges of pavement. In some suburban locations and in all rural areas, use paved shoulders through the intersection.

| Typical Cross Section Widths Through Intersections |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Urban/Suburban Areas | Rural Areas |
| M (Median Width) | W (Traveled Way Width) | M (Median Width) | W (Traveled Way Width) |
| 18 ft (5.5 m) | 24 ft or 36 ft (7.2 or 10.8 m) | 18 ft (5.5 m) | 14 ft (4.2 m) |
| 18 ft (5.5 m) | 24 ft (7.2 m) | 22 ft (7.0 m) | 24 ft (7.2 m) |
| 22 ft (7.0 m) | 24 ft or 36 ft (7.2 or 10.8 m) | 24 ft or 36 ft (7.2 or 10.8 m) | |

Notes:
1. This width of curbed median usually is used on city streets where a traversable median is desired between intersections.
2. Generally, this width of raised-curb median should not be used on city streets with unsignalized intersections and median crossovers.
3. For additional guidance on median and traveled way widths, see the geometric design tables in Part V, Design of Highway Types.

RAISED-CURB CHANNELIZED INTERSECTION
(Parallel Left-Turn Lane)

Figure 36-3.L
### 36-3.03(b) Parallel Left-Turn Lanes Without Offset

Figures 36-3.J through 36-3.N and the following provide the design criteria for left-turn lanes that are adjacent and parallel to the through traveled way and are not offset:

1. **Two-Lane Facilities.** For safety improvements and 3R projects, use a flush median design at isolated intersections as shown in Figure 36-3.J. For new construction or reconstruction projects, a channelized left-turn lane with a flush island or a raised-curb island may be used depending on specific site conditions. Figure 36-3.K illustrates the flush design and Figure 36-3.L illustrates the raised-curb median design. Both figures depict parallel left-turn lanes with negative left-turn lane offset. Additional design details may be needed to incorporate a tapered left-turn lane or positive offset left-turn lane design to improve sight distance and safety; see Section 34-3. Where the raised-curb median is channelized back to a two-lane traveled way, use the criteria discussed in the IDOT publication, *Transitional Approaches to Channelized Intersections*, Figure 36-3.K, and Section 36-4.03(a).

2. **Narrow Raised-Curb Medians.** Left-turn lanes generally will be the parallel design. This design is illustrated in Figure 36-3.L. To properly develop left-turn lanes for new construction and reconstruction projects, see the footnotes in Figure 36-3.L. Additional design details may be needed to incorporate a tapered left-turn lane or positive offset left-turn lane design to improve sight distance and safety; see Section 34-3.

3. **Narrow Expressway Medians.** Left-turn lanes generally will be the parallel design due to restricted right of way. This is illustrated in Figure 36-3.M. Figure 36-3.M also illustrates how to terminate a median barrier before the development of the left-turn lane. Additional design details may be needed to incorporate a tapered left-turn lane or positive offset left-turn lane design to improve sight distance and safety; see Section 34-3.

4. **Multilane Highways with Wide Medians.** Figure 36-3.N illustrates a typical parallel left-turn lane design with a wide depressed median. When using this design, consider the following:

- This design is generally only used where the current crossroad ADT is less than 1500 and where the current left-turn DHV in each direction from the mainline is no greater than 60 vph.
- On existing expressways or multilane facilities, median widths of 40 ft to 70 ft (12.0 m to 21.5 m) are allowed to remain in place.
- On new construction or reconstruction projects, use a median width of 50 ft (15 m) and median slopes of 1V:6H.
- Additional design details may be needed to incorporate a tapered left-turn lane or positive offset left-turn lane design to improve sight distance and safety; see Section 34-3.
Notes:

1. Use a 20 ft (6.0 m) median only where ROW or topography dictates.
2. Where the current crossroad ADT is greater than 250, provide right-turn lanes on the expressway.
3. A two-centered curve is desirable with right-turn lanes; see Section 36-2.01.
4. End the right-turn deceleration length at the beginning of the radius return.
5. Intersection sight distance must be checked for the vehicle on the side road for the line of sight past the median barrier.
6. For proper placement of a stop sign, a small triangular corner island may be required on the crossroad approach to the expressway.
7. See the Bureau of Operations’ Policy and Procedures Manual for proper placement of advance guide signs.

EXPRESSWAY INTERSECTION WITH MEDIAN BARRIERS
(Design Speed ≥ 50 mph (80 km/hr) and Narrow Median with Restricted ROW)

Figure 36-3.M
Notes:

1. Where the current crossroad ADT is greater than 250, provide right-turn lanes on the expressway or multilane facility.
2. A two-centered curve is desirable with right-turn lanes; see Section 36-2.01.
3. End the right-turn deceleration length at the beginning of the radius return.
4. For proper placement of a stop sign, a small triangular corner island may be required on the crossroad approach to the expressway.
5. See the Bureau of Operations’ Policy and Procedures Manual for proper placement of advance guide signs.

See Section 36-3.03(b) for additional design details.
Offset left-turn lanes can consist of either a tapered design or a parallel design. Figures 36-3.O through 36-3.S illustrate the various designs for offset left-turn lanes. In addition, the designer should consider the following:

1. **Tapered Offset Left-Turn Lanes.** Figure 36-3.O(1) illustrates a typical tapered offset left-turn lane design in a wide median. Figure 36-3.O(2) provides the details on the channelization portion of the offset design. The advantages of the tapered offset design versus a parallel lane design without an offset is that the offset design provides better visibility for the turning motorist to the opposing traffic, decreases the possible conflict between opposing left-turning vehicles, and serves more left-turning vehicles in a given time period. In addition, the designer should consider the following:

   a. **Guidelines.** Provide a tapered offset left-turn lane design where at least two of the following are applicable:
      - the median width is equal to or greater than 40 ft (12 m) and only one left-turn lane in each direction on the mainline highway is required for capacity;
      - the current mainline ADT is 1500 or greater and the left-turn DHV in each direction from the mainline is greater than 60 vph. Under these conditions, vehicles waiting in opposing left-turn lanes have the probability of obstructing each other’s line of sight; and
      - the intersection will be signalized.

   b. **Median Widths.** Median widths of 40 ft to 70 ft (12 m to 21.5 m) are allowed to remain in place on existing expressways or multiline facilities. On new construction or reconstruction projects, use a median width of 50 ft (15 m) and median slopes of 1V:6H.

   c. **Curb and Gutter.** Use M-4 (M-10) curb and gutter on all corner and channelizing island, unless signals are placed within the island. In this situation, use M-6 (M-15) curb and gutter.

2. **Parallel Offset Left-Turn Lanes.** By maximizing sight distance for left-turning vehicles, parallel offset left-turn lanes offer similar advantages as the tapered design. However, they may be used at intersections with medians less than 40 ft (12 m) but greater than 13 ft (4.0 m). Figures 36-3.P, 36-3.Q, and 36-3.R illustrate the plan views for parallel offset left-turn lanes for median widths of 16 ft, 18 ft, and 22 ft (5.0 m, 5.5 m, and 7.0 m), respectively. Figure 36-3.S provides the typical section design criteria for all three median widths.
Notes:

1. Place drainage inlets in the M-4.24 (M-10.60) gutter to facilitate drainage within the left-turn bay.

2. A two-centered curve is desirable with right-turn lanes; see Section 36-2.01.

3. Where a left-turn lane is required, design the median as a raised-curb median for delineation. Where no median is proposed, the minimum traveled way width should be 22 ft (6.6m).

4. End the right-turn deceleration length at beginning of the radius turn.

5. See the Bureau of Operation’s Policy and Procedures Manual for proper placement of guide sign.

Consider providing lighting at this intersection.

**EXPRESSWAY OR MULTILANE FACILITY WITH MEDIAN WIDTH ≥ 40 ft (12 m)**

(Tapered Offset Left-Turn Lane Design)

Figure 36-3.O(1)
TYPICAL CORNER ISLAND AND CHANNELIZATION DETAILS
(Tapered Offset Left-Turn Lane)

Figure 36-3.O(2)
TYPICAL DESIGN FOR PARALLEL OFFSET LEFT-TURN LANES
(Existing 16 ft (4.88 m) Wide Traversable Median)

Figure 36-3.P

Note: See Figure 36-3.S for typical Section A-A.
TYPICAL DESIGN FOR PARALLEL OFFSET LEFT-TURN LANES
(18 ft (5.5 m) Raised-Curb Median)

Figure 36-3.Q
**Note:** See Figure 36.3.S for typical Section A-A.

**TYPICAL DESIGN FOR PARALLEL OFFSET LEFT-TURN LANES**

*(22 ft (7.0 m) Raised-Curb Median)*

**Figure 36-3.R**
**SECTION A-A**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>&quot;A&quot; Median Width E-E</th>
<th>&quot;B&quot; Curbed Median</th>
<th>&quot;C&quot; Left-Lane Turn</th>
<th>&quot;D&quot; Offset</th>
<th>&quot;E&quot;</th>
<th>&quot;F&quot;</th>
<th>&quot;G&quot; Left-Turn Curb</th>
<th>&quot;H&quot; Flow Direction</th>
<th>&quot;I&quot; Flow Direction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>16 ft</td>
<td>3 ft</td>
<td>10 ft</td>
<td>3 ft</td>
<td>20 in</td>
<td>2 in</td>
<td>14 in</td>
<td>3/16&quot;/ft/traveled way</td>
<td>3/16&quot;/ft/traveled way</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 ft</td>
<td>4.5 ft</td>
<td>11 ft</td>
<td>2.5 ft</td>
<td>20 in</td>
<td>20 in</td>
<td>14 in</td>
<td>3/16&quot;/ft/traveled way</td>
<td>3/16&quot;/ft/traveled way</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22 ft</td>
<td>6 ft</td>
<td>12 ft</td>
<td>4 ft</td>
<td>32 in</td>
<td>26 in</td>
<td>14 in</td>
<td>3/16&quot;/ft/traveled way</td>
<td>3/16&quot;/ft/traveled way</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**US Customary**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metric</th>
<th>&quot;A&quot; Median Width E-E</th>
<th>&quot;B&quot; Curbed Median</th>
<th>&quot;C&quot; Left-Lane Turn</th>
<th>&quot;D&quot; Offset</th>
<th>&quot;E&quot;</th>
<th>&quot;F&quot;</th>
<th>&quot;G&quot; Left-Turn Curb</th>
<th>&quot;H&quot; Flow Direction</th>
<th>&quot;I&quot; Flow Direction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4.88 m</td>
<td>980 mm</td>
<td>3.0 m</td>
<td>900 mm</td>
<td>3.0 m</td>
<td>900 mm</td>
<td>500 mm</td>
<td>350 mm</td>
<td>2.0%/traveled way</td>
<td>1.5%/traveled way</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5 m</td>
<td>1.35 m</td>
<td>3.3 m</td>
<td>850 mm</td>
<td>3.3 m</td>
<td>850 mm</td>
<td>500 mm</td>
<td>350 mm</td>
<td>6.0%/median</td>
<td>1.5%/traveled way</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.0 m</td>
<td>1.75 m</td>
<td>3.6 m</td>
<td>800 mm</td>
<td>3.6 m</td>
<td>800 mm</td>
<td>600 mm</td>
<td>350 mm</td>
<td>6.0%/median</td>
<td>1.5%/traveled way</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** See Figures 36-3.P, 36-3.Q, and 36-3.R for location of Section A-A.

**TYPICAL SECTION WITH PARALLEL OFFSET LEFT-TURN LANNES**

**Figure 36-3.S**
36-3.04 Right-Turn Lane Design

36-3.04(a) General

Section 36-3.02 provides design criteria for right-turn lane widths and lengths. Right-turn lanes may be designed with or without turning roadways depending on site conditions. Figures 36-3.H, 36-3.M, 36-3.N, and 36-3.O(1) illustrate typical designs for right-turn lanes. For information on the design of offset right-turn lanes see item (c) below.

36-3.04(b) Access within Right-turn Lanes

Because of potential conflicts with right-turning traffic, commercial entrances should not be allowed within the limits of the right-turn lane storage or taper.

36-3.04(c) Offset Right-turn Lanes

A potential problem in installing exclusive right-turn lanes at intersections is that vehicles in the right-turn lane on the major road, especially buses and large trucks, may block the minor-road drivers’ view of through traffic approaching from the left. This can lead to crashes between vehicles departing from the minor road and those proceeding through on the major road. To reduce the potential for crashes of this type, right-turn lanes can be offset laterally so that vehicles in the right-turn lanes do not obstruct the view of the minor road driver. Figure 36-3.T(1) illustrates a typical tapered design for an offset right-turn lane at a high speed rural location. Alternatively, a parallel offset right-turn lane design can be considered which achieves the same sight distance enhancement objectives. An example of the parallel design is shown in Figure 36-3.T(2).

When an exclusive right-turn lane is proposed or currently exists within the project at an unsignalized tee or four-legged intersection, the use of an offset right-turn lane should be considered for the initial construction or as an intersection improvement, respectively, when any of the following factors exist or are proposed within the project’s design life:

- Heavy volume of right-turning vehicles;
- High proportion of heavy vehicles (large trucks and buses) in the right-turning traffic stream, which may impede sight distance to the adjacent through lane(s) of traffic;
- Mainline horizontal curvature which reduces available sight lines, or
- Multi-lane crossroad approach.

Existing crash data should also be used to support the decision to either install an offset right-turn lane or maintain or install a traditional right-turn lane, on existing routes.

Installation of offset right-turn lanes increases the overall width of the intersection. The additional width lengthens intersection crossing times thereby increasing pedestrian and bicyclist exposure.
TAPERED OFFSET RIGHT TURN LANE DESIGN EXAMPLE

Figure 36-3.T(1)
PARALLEL OFFSET RIGHT-TURN LANE DESIGN EXAMPLE

Figure 36-3.T(2)
within the intersection. This increase in exposure for these vulnerable users, in addition to the higher travel speeds that often result from this type of design, could lead to additional crash risks. A pedestrian refuge island could be installed between the offset right-turn lane and through lanes to mitigate these risks. However, raised islands should not typically be used on high speed approaches. Where pedestrians and bicyclists will be present, additional consideration should therefore be given before implementing offset right-turn lanes. In cases where an on-street bike lane is provided along the mainline, an offset right-turn lane would not typically be used.

36-3.05 Dual Turn Lanes

36-3.05(a) Guidelines

At intersections with high-turning volumes throughout the day, dual left- and/or right-turn lanes may be considered. However, multiple turn lanes may cause problems with right-of-way, lane alignment, local access, traffic signal phasing and visibility, signing locations, accommodating pedestrians, and erratic movements for turning drivers. In place of dual right-turn lanes, and while addressing pedestrian safety concerns, the designer may consider providing a turning roadway with a design speed of 15 mph (25 km/hr) or more and a free-flow, right-turn acceleration lane; see Section 36-2.03. Dual left- and/or right-turn lanes are generally considered where:

- there is insufficient space to provide the necessary length of a single turn lane because of restrictive site conditions (e.g., closely spaced intersections);

- based on a capacity analysis, the necessary time for a protected left-turn phase for a single lane becomes unattainable to meet the level of service criteria (average delay per vehicle); and/or

- more than 300 vph are projected to be turning.

Dual left and right-turn lanes should only be used with signalization providing a separate protected turning phase. Since a protected signal phase may increase signal inefficiencies that may negatively affect overall delay and level of service (LOS), it may be more prudent to provide a single left- or right-turn lane, and with it, a permissive left-turn signal and/or the allowance of right-turns on red if the volume warranting dual turn lanes only occurs for one or two hours of the day. However, permissive left-turns across three lanes of opposing through traffic should be avoided.

36-3.05(b) Design

Figure 36-3.V illustrates the more important design elements for dual left-turn and right-turn lanes. Figure 36-3.W illustrates a typical cross section for a dual left-turn lane design. In addition, the designer should consider the following:

1. **Taper Length.** Taper lengths for dual turn lanes should be a minimum of 300 ft (90 m); see Figure 36-3.V.
2. **Turning Radii.** The turning radii for dual left-turns should be a minimum of 90 ft (27 m). This will allow for two vehicles to comfortably negotiate the turns side-by-side.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Two-Lane Left-Turn Facilities</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Inner Radius</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90 ft to 160 ft (27 m to 49 m)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>160 ft to 250 ft (50 m to 75 m)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

GW = Gutter Width  E-E = Edge to Edge

**MINIMUM DEPARTURE OPENINGS FOR DUAL LEFT-TURN LANES**

**Figure 36-3.U**

3. **Throat Width.** On dual left-turn lanes, the presence of center and corner islands may lead to an increase in shy distances that will restrict turning paths, therefore, the design width of the left-turning paths is critical. Also, the magnitude of the inner radius influences the amount of off-tracking and, as such, the required width of the turning path. Figure 36-3.U gives the minimum widths of two-lane, left-turn departure openings based on the dimension of the inner radius and on the design of the traveled way edges at the most critical location of off-tracking. A computer simulated turning template program should be used when possible to check turning path/throat width design.

4. **Median Widths and Type.** Dual left-turn lanes require a minimum median width of 30 ft (9.0 m). For access management, the median shall be barrier curb, where the design speed is less than 50 mph (80 km/hr). If the design speed is 50 mph (80 km/hr) or greater, a divided median should be considered or mountable curb should be utilized. The median approaching the left turn lanes should fully shadow the dual left-turn lanes. If the median width approaching (upstream) the intersection is less than 30 ft (9.0 m), 30 ft (9.0 m) minimum median width and barrier type curb should extend, at a minimum, throughout the length of the left turn bay taper and storage up to the stop bar.

5. **Special Pavement Markings.** Consult with the District Bureau/Section of Traffic or the Bureau of Operations in the Central Office for the use of pavement marking within the intersection to effectively and safely guide two lines of vehicles turning abreast.
6. **Opposing Left-Turning Traffic.** If opposing dual left-turn lanes are proposed, the designer must ensure that there is sufficient space for all turning movements. Desirably, the separation between the outside edges of the opposing left-turn turning paths should be 10 ft (3.0 m); see Figure 36-3.V. If space is unavailable, it will be necessary to alter the signal phasing to allow the two directions of turning traffic to move through the intersection on separate phases.

7. **Turning Templates.** The turning paths for multiple turn lanes must be checked for conflicts by using the applicable turning templates or a computer simulated turning template program. The designer should assume that the selected design vehicle will turn from the outside lane of the multiple turn lanes. Desirably, the inside vehicle should be an SU but, as a minimum, the inside vehicle can be assumed to be a passenger car turning side by side with the selected design vehicle. Include a printout of the computer simulated turning paths with the IDS, if applicable.
TYPICAL SECTION WITH DUAL LEFT-TURN LANES
(Raised-Curb Median and Posted Speed < 50 mph (80 km/hr))

Figure 36-3.W

Note: See Figure 36-3.U for location of Section A-A.
36-4  CHANNELIZING ISLANDS AND MEDIAN TREATMENTS

Several of the design elements described in this chapter require flush or raised channelizing islands and/or median treatments within the intersection area. Some intersections, especially those with oblique angle crossings, result in large paved areas that may cause motorists to wander from natural or expected paths and may cause long pedestrian crossings. These movements may result in conflicts and/or unpredictable operations, and could be enhanced by incorporating channelizing islands or medians in the design of the intersection.

At rural locations where higher speeds are prevalent, flush channelizing medians and islands can be used in conjunction with left-turn lanes and for turning roadways. In urban areas where speeds generally are lower, but where traffic volumes are generally higher, raised channelizing islands are used in conjunction with added lanes primarily to increase capacity and safety at the intersection.

36-4.01 Island Types

Islands can be grouped into the following classifications. Most island types serve multiple functions:

1. **Corner/Directional Islands.** Directional or corner triangular islands control right-turn movements by providing positive alignment guidance. Section 36-2.02 discusses corner islands.

2. **Center Channelizing Islands.** Center channelizing islands (also known as channelizing medians) separate opposing traffic flows, alert the driver to the crossroad ahead, and regulate traffic through an intersection. These islands are often introduced at intersections on undivided highways and are particularly advantageous in controlling left-turns at skewed intersections.

3. **Refuge Islands.** Refuge islands may include both corner islands and center channelizing islands, and function to aid and protect pedestrians who cross a wide roadway. These islands may be required for pedestrians where complex signal phasing is used and may permit the use of two-stage crossings. Their use may also increase traffic signal efficiency by allowing the time allocated for pedestrian movements to be reduced. In order to qualify as a pedestrian refuge area islands must have raised curb and certain minimum dimensions, including 6 ft (1.8 m) between curb faces.

36-4.02 Selection of Island Type

Islands may be some combination of flush, traversable, raised-curb, or turf, and could be triangular or elongated in shape. Selection of an appropriate type of channelizing island should be based on:

- traffic characteristics;
- cost considerations;
• location type (urban, suburban, or rural);
• degree of access management desired,
• safety of all roadway users, and
• maintenance considerations.

The remainder of this section offers guidance on the selection and design of islands and medians.

36-4.02(a) **Flush or Traversable Islands**

Flush islands, which are delineated by pavement markings (e.g., paint, thermoplastic, epoxy), or traversable islands, which are delineated by M-2 (M-5) curbs, are appropriate:

• on highways to delineate separate left-turn lanes (flush or traversable);
• in restricted locations where delineation of vehicular paths is desirable, but space for larger, raised-curb islands is not available (flush);
• in areas where better long-term visual delineation is needed at night and during inclement weather, but space for raised-curb islands is not available (traversable);
• to separate opposing traffic streams on low-speed urban streets (flush or traversable);
• for temporary channelization during construction (flush).

36-4.02(b) **Raised-Curb Islands**

Raised-curb islands are bordered by barrier (B-type) or mountable (M-type) curb at least 4 in. (100 mm) high, and are appropriate as follows:

• on low-speed highways where the primary function is to provide positive separation for opposing traffic movements;
• at locations requiring positive delineation of vehicular paths, such as where a major route turns or at intersections with unusual geometry (including approaches to roundabouts);
• where the island is intended to prohibit or prevent traffic movements (e.g., wrong-way movements or to manage access within the intersection);
• where the number of lanes and/or volume of traffic being crossed by motorists attempting to turn left from adjacent entrances in the vicinity of the intersection would otherwise pose safety concerns;
• where traffic back-ups on the mainline intersection approach could otherwise cause sight distance restrictions to traffic turning from either the mainline or adjacent entrances in the vicinity of the intersection;
• where a primary or secondary island function is to provide a location for traffic signal poles or signs; and/or
• where one function of the island is to provide a pedestrian refuge.
Raised-curb islands and medians are generally not used in rural environments, but may be utilized to address specific safety and operational concerns at rural intersections having the following characteristics:

- on the crossroad through an interchange to delineate median crossovers and turn lanes, and to prevent wrong-way movements, and
- at unusual or complex intersection configurations where higher visibility would promote greater safety and more efficient traffic operations.

Where curb and gutter is proposed in rural areas with design speeds of 50 mph (80 km/h) or greater, use only mountable curbs, offset the curb faces from the edges of pavement by up to the shoulder width, and consider providing supplemental intersection illumination. In addition, provide prismatic reflectors on the top of curbs to enhance delineation of the island and turn lanes at night. Section 34-2.04 provides further guidance on the types of curbing used for islands.

**36-4.02(c) Pavement Edge Islands**

Channelizing islands formed by pavement edges generally only apply to rural or suburban areas. One example of this channelization type is where a divided four-lane facility with a median ditch section is temporarily tapered to a two-lane highway section. This reduction of the four lanes down to two is considered channelization. See Chapter 45 for details of these channelized approaches.

**36-4.03 Design of Islands and Median Treatments**

**36-4.03(a) Channelizing Islands**

Special care is necessary in their design of channelizing islands to ensure that they do not become a hazard. The designer should consider the following criteria:

1. **Nose**. Place the noses of raised-curb islands so that they are conspicuous to approaching motorists and clear of the assumed vehicular paths. This clearance should be both physical and visually apparent so that drivers will not shy away from the island.

2. **Nose Ramping**. Ramp the approach nose of raised-curb according to the criteria presented in the *IDOT Highway Standards*. Nose ramping is applicable where:
   - a raised-curb median or curbed centerline channelization is introduced to separate opposing lanes of traffic;
   - a change is made from a flush or traversable two-way, left-turn lane to a raised-curb median; and
   - median crossovers or openings are outlined with curb and gutter.

At locations that are designed for pedestrian refuge, and/or include traffic signal poles or light standards, nose ramping is typically not done.
3. **Alignment.** Provide a smooth, free-flowing alignment both into and out of the divided roadway. On entering the channelized approach, widen the traveled way out opposite the curbed nose and gradually transition it to the normal divided traveled way width. Also, provide a gradual transition on the departure side of the divided roadway. Where two lanes are being funneled down to one lane on the departure side of the channelizing island, provide sufficient pavement width and/or an outside paved shoulder at the curbed nose to provide some lateral escape clearance for merging vehicles. This addresses a situation where, for example, a motorist has failed to observe the single lane warning signs and is mistakenly operating two abreast as the vehicle approaches the transition to two-lane, two-way operations.

4. **Island Size.** Traffic channelizing islands should be designed to command the driver’s attention. Island shapes and sizes are unique at every intersection. For raised-curb islands introduced at isolated intersections, the divisional island should be designed according to the IDOT publication *Transitional Approaches to Channelized Intersections* and Figure 36-3.L. Also, see Figure 36-4.A. For flush, channelizing islands introduced at isolated intersections; see Figures 36-3.J and 36-3.K.

5. **Island Length.** The island should be of sufficient length to forewarn a motorist of an approaching intersection and to provide space for the proper development of a free-flowing alignment. The edge of the traveled way, the width of the divided roadways, and the width of the center channelizing island normally control the length of island and the pavement edge radii.

6. **Delineation.** Channelizing islands should be delineated based on their size, location, and function. Raised-curb islands present the most positive means of delineation. Where space is limited, use paint to delineate the island. Raised pavement markers, curb-top reflectors, or paint striping can be used in advance of, and around, an island to help alert the driver of an approaching island. These traffic control devices are especially important at the approach to raised-curb divisional islands.

   Round the approach and merging ends of curbed islands according to Figure 36-4.A.

7. **Offsets.** Figure 36-4.A provides guidance on the applicable offsets that should be used with curbed-channelizing islands.

8. **Corrugated Median Surface.** In advance of the curbed nose of a divisional island, provide a sufficient length of corrugated median that allows the driver enough warning time to move away from the raised-curb island. Use 1½ seconds of travel time based on the design speed to determine the length of the corrugated surface.

9. **Cross Slopes.** With center curbed-channelizing islands up to approximately 32 ft (9.5 m) wide, and where such islands are located on tangent segments or on very flat curvature, the length of the island normally provides sufficient distance for gradual lateral shifts of traffic either to the right (entering) or to the left (departing). Because the required lateral shifts usually are not greater than the normal rate of lane shifts made during a passing measure, the cross slope of the pavement through the channelized approach can be unidirectional at 3/16”/ft (1.5%) or 1/4”/ft (2%) and should be sloped away from the island.
10. **Stopping Sight Distance.** At a minimum, provide stopping sight distance to the ramped nose of the island. Desirably, provide decision sight distance to the ramped nose.

11. **Typical Designs.** Figure 36-4.A illustrates a typical curbed divisional island and applicable approach treatment. Guidance for standardized designs based on various design speeds, pavement widths, and island widths are provided in IDOT’s *Transitional Approaches to Channelized Intersections*. This document can be found on the IDOT website. For flush-channelizing islands, see Figures 36-3.J and 36-3.K.

12. **Simplicity.** Do not introduce divisional islands in areas which can create confusion due to complexity or which cause excessive restrictions. Complex intersections, which present multiple choices of movement, are undesirable. Ensure that the design remains simple to minimize the potential for driver confusion.
Notes:

1. For additional design details, see the IDOT publication Transitional Approaches to Channelized Intersections.

2. The length and shape of channelizing islands derived from the above sketch also may be used as a guide for determining a flush, center island design.

3. If \( W_2 = 14 \text{ ft (4.2 m)} \), use a 3\(^{\circ}16"/\text{ft (1.5\%)} \) drainage slope on the traveled way.

4. If \( W_2 = 22 \text{ ft (6.6 m)} \) or \( 24 \text{ ft (7.2 m)} \), use a 1\(^{\circ}4"/\text{ft (2.0\%)} \) drainage slope on the traveled way.

5. Ramp nose at \( W_4 \) location.

\[
M = \text{See Figure 36-3.L for typical median widths}
\]
\[
W_1 = \text{Undivided approach width}
\]
\[
W_2 = \text{Divided approach width}
\]
\[
W_3 = \frac{W_1}{2} \text{ or 14 ft (4.2 m), whichever is larger}
\]
\[
W_4 = \frac{W_3 + W_2}{2}, \text{ desirable}
\]
\[
W_5 = W_2 + 1 \text{ ft (300 mm)}
\]

**TYPICAL CHANNELIZING ISLAND DESIGN**
(Raised-Curb Medians)

Figure 36-4.A
36-4.03(b) Pedestrian Refuge Within Islands

Raised islands may be incorporated into the design of signalized intersections for multiple reasons. The FHWA notes that overall safety will usually be enhanced in urban and suburban areas if crosswalks at signalized intersections direct pedestrians through raised curb islands with adequate space for refuge. These areas allow pedestrians to break major street crossings into multiple shorter stages. This allows for shorter cycle lengths and places pedestrians in locations that make them more highly visible to drivers.

Concerns related to the provision of raised median refuge and raised corner island refuge may include added right of way, challenges in snow removal, the need for future island repairs, and the potential for more fixed object hazards immediately adjacent to traffic. Consider providing delineation of refuge islands using curb-mounted delineators. To the extent possible, locate signal poles outside intersection returns. Coordinate with district operations staff regarding the advantages of refuge areas and to hear any operational concerns. Weigh trade-offs related to any return widening required to create space for raised corner islands. Ideally, provide a balanced design that includes raised pedestrian refuge features within a compact overall intersection footprint.

See Sections 36-2.02 and 36-2.03 for overall design guidance applicable to corner islands, and Section 58-1 for the application of ADA criteria at intersections. Refer also to Section 17-4 for additional pedestrian intersection design guidance.

Corner islands at urban and suburban intersections must meet all requirements for pedestrian accessibility and refuge. Rather than designing with sloped curb ramps it is often preferable to maintain pedestrian access routes (PARs) at pavement-level through islands. Standard 424031 provides details for median pedestrian crossings that include curb ramps, and Standard 606001 shows the associated depressed curb requirements. By keeping the PAR at pavement level there will typically be no grade breaks within the island; depressed curb in those cases can be optional. In either case, the portion of raised island surrounding the PAR area(s) should be of sufficient size to distinguish it as a raised island and to make it easily constructible.

The minimum PAR width at all points through islands shall be 5 ft (1.5 m). Corner islands will often serve as the junction of three crosswalks and will have multiple PARs that each must meet accessibility requirements. Consider each PAR independently and ensure that the cross slope along each is 2.0 percent or less.

At signalized locations pedestrian pushbuttons and pedestrian signal heads will typically be incorporated into any raised island that provides refuge opportunities. Exceptions may occur, however, for raised medians where cycle lengths are sufficient to clear pedestrians through the entire crossing of a leg. There may be a need for two or three pushbuttons and pedestrian signal heads within a corner island. In those cases, size limitations will make it acceptable to provide less than the preferred 10 ft (3.0 m) separation between pushbuttons. The face of each pushbutton should be parallel to the crosswalk to be used, and buttons should be offset sufficiently such that users of each pushbutton location can simultaneously dwell within the island. Criteria for both the maximum side reach offset and minimum pole distance from face of
curb must be satisfied. Within these constraints minimize the total number of poles within each island. Provide pushbutton extensions as necessary to achieve a fully accessible design within required reach ranges. Keep utility covers out of the PAR to the extent possible.

To further inform design that incorporates refuge areas, refer to the Central Bureau of Operations’ document entitled Policy on Pedestrian Pushbutton Locations and Accessible Pedestrian Signals, Section 4E.08 of the Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices, and Sections R403, R406, and R407 of the draft PROWAG.

36-4.04 Median Openings

36-4.04(a) Location/Spacing

Property owners and/or local agencies may desire that median openings be provided on divided highways at all public roads and major traffic generators. However, this may result in close intersection spacing that may impair the operation of the facility. The following recommended minimum spacings should be evaluated when determining the location for a median opening:

1. Rural Facilities. Median openings should be at least ½ mile (800 m) apart and, desirably, 1 mile (1.6 km) apart, subject to public service requirements and as determined by an engineering study.

2. Urban Facilities. The desirable minimum spacing between median openings should be approximately ¼ mile (400 m). At a minimum, the spacing of median openings should be far enough apart to allow for the development of exclusive left-turn lanes with proper lengths.

For both rural and urban facilities, the available sight distance in the vicinity of a median opening is also a factor in the determination of its location. In addition, on some facilities, commercial establishments with heavy truck traffic may dictate the location of median openings. For additional details on the location and spacing of median openings, see Chapters 45 through 48.
36-4.04(b) **Design**

Figure 36-4.B presents a general figure for the design of a median opening at an intersection. The following will apply to the design of median openings:

1. **Design Vehicle.** Use the largest vehicle that will be making a left turn with some frequency. See Section 36-1.08 for guidelines in selecting the design vehicle.

2. **Encroachment.** The desirable design will allow the design vehicle to make a left turn and to remain entirely within the through inside lane of the divided facility. In addition, the turning vehicle should be no closer than 2 ft (600 mm) to the inside curb or inside edge of pavement. However, depending on traffic control or available intersection sight distance, it would be acceptable for the design vehicle to occupy both travel lanes; see Figure 36-4.B.

3. **Length of Opening.** The length of a median opening should properly accommodate the turning path of the design vehicle. The minimum length is the largest of the following:
   - approach width plus 8 ft (2.4 m), including crossroad median width;
   - approach width plus the width of shoulders, including crossroad median width;
   - the length based on the selected design vehicle; or
   - 40 ft (12 m).

Evaluate each median opening individually to determine the proper length. Consider the following factors in the evaluation:

   a. **Turning Templates.** Check the proposed design with the turning template for the selected design vehicle. Give consideration to the frequency of the turn and to the encroachment onto adjacent travel lanes or shoulders by the turning vehicle.

   b. **Nose Offset.** At four-leg intersections, traffic traveling through the median opening (going straight) will pass the nose of the median end (semicircular or bullet nose). To provide a sense of comfort for these drivers, the offset between the crossroad through travel lane (extended) and the median nose should be at least 4 ft (1.2 m).

   c. **Lane Alignment.** Provide a design where the lanes line up properly across the intersection. Consider the use of tapered left-turn lanes within the median to provide additional sight distance to oncoming traffic at both signalized and unsignalized median crossings.
Note: See discussion in Section 36-4.04(b) for minimum L criteria.

MEDIAN OPENING DESIGN

Figure 36-4.B
d. **Location of Crosswalks.** Wherever pedestrians may be present and geometrics allow, consider a crosswalk design that intersects a raised median near the nose to provide a refuge area.

e. **Traffic Control.** The geometrics engineer should coordinate with the district Bureau of Operations on the design of the intersection for signing, striping, and traffic control.

4. **Median Nose Design.** The shape of the nose at median openings is determined by the width of the median ($M_1$) or ($M_2$). The two basic types of median nose designs are the semicircular design and bullet-nose design. The following summarizes their usage:

- For medians up to 4 ft (1.2 m) in width, there is little operational difference between the two designs.

- The semicircular design is generally acceptable for median widths ($M_1$) up to 10 ft (3.0 m).

- For medians ($M_1$) wider than 10 ft (3.0 m), use the bullet-nose design. Also use this design for the divisional island remaining after locating a left-turn lane in median.

- As medians become successively wider, the minimum length of the median opening becomes the governing design control.

For the bullet-nose design, a compound curvature arrangement should be used. Figure 36-4.C provides the typical details for a median opening with a bullet-nose design.

5. **U-turns.** Median openings are sometimes used to accommodate U-turns on multilane divided highways and urban arterials. Preferably, a smaller vehicle should be able to begin and end the U-turn on the inner lanes next to the median. Figure 36-4.D provides the minimum median widths for U-turn maneuvers for various design vehicles and various levels of encroachment. Check the U-turn design with the applicable turning template. For inner-lane-to-shoulder designs it is often appropriate to incorporate an extended pavement area, or loon, so that larger design vehicles making frequent U-turns may do so within an area of full-depth pavement.

6. **Sight Distance.** Check all median openings for applicable sight distance criteria; see Section 36-6.
**MEDIAN NOSE DESIGN**
(Multilane Divided Highways)

**Figure 36-4.C**

- **L** = Length of median opening. See discussion in Section 36-4.04(b) for minimum L values.
- **M₁** = median width measured between the two edges of the inside travel lanes
- **M₂** = width of divisional island (raised-curb or depressed) remaining after the width of the left-turn (if present) has been subtracted from the median width (M₁)
- **O** = Nose offset.
- **P** = As shown in figure.
- **R₁** = variable, based on design vehicle and median width (M₂)
- **R₂** = M₂/5 to edge of left-turn lane
- **R₂** = M₁/5 to edge of traveled way where a left-turn lane is not present
  
  R₂ is typically rounded up to the next highest whole number
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Maneuver</th>
<th>M - Min. width of median for design vehicle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19 ft (5.7 m)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inner Lane to Inner Lane</td>
<td>30 ft (9 m)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inner Lane to Outer Lane</td>
<td>18 ft (5 m)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inner Lane to Shoulder</td>
<td>8 ft (2 m)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MINIMUM WIDTHS NEEDED FOR U-TURNS (Multilane Divided Highways)

Figure 36-4.D
36-5 EXTENSION OF THROUGH LANES BEYOND AN INTERSECTION

Where traffic volumes drop off considerably after passing a crossroad, one lane can be dropped beyond the intersection. A lane may be dropped downstream as an exclusive turn lane or with a merging taper into the adjacent through lane. In either scenario, proper highway signing and pavement striping is critical in order to convey the upstream lane drop to the motorist.

To fully realize capacity benefits and to provide for a safe merge when utilizing a merging taper, the through lanes must be extended beyond the intersection for a defined minimum distance. Figure 36-5.A provides preliminary design criteria for determining the minimum distance a lane should be extended beyond an intersection. For higher volume locations, additional length beyond the minimum may be required for the formation of adequate gaps in traffic that will minimize conflicts during merging. Each intersection should therefore be designed on a case-by-case basis, considering all site specific factors.
Notes:

1. $D_e$ is that distance required by a vehicle to accelerate from a stop to 5 mph (10 km/hr) below the design speed of the highway.

2. The taper distance is calculated assuming a 12 ft (3.6 m) lane and a taper rate of 45:1 for design speeds of 45 mph (70 km/hr) or less or 50:1 for design speeds of 50 mph (80 km/hr) or greater.
36-6  INTERSECTION SIGHT DISTANCE

36-6.01  General

At each intersection the potential exists for vehicles to conflict with each other when entering, exiting, or crossing the intersection. The designer should provide sufficient sight distance for a driver to perceive these potential conflicts and to perform the necessary actions needed to negotiate the intersection safely. The additional costs and impacts to achieve this sight distance are often justified based on the safety and operational considerations.

Because all intersections on State highways are either stop controlled or signalized, no guidelines are provided for no control or yield-controlled intersections. For these types of intersections, the designer is referred to NCHRP Report 383, *Intersection Sight Distance* for guidance and/or the AASHTO *Policy on the Geometric Design of Highways and Streets*.

36-6.02  Design Procedures

The Department uses gap acceptance as the conceptual basis for its intersection sight distance (ISD) criteria. The ISD criteria used by the Department is intended to find a balance between an acceptable level of safety and what can be provided at an intersection on a practical basis. This ISD methodology ensures that an intersection operates smoothly without forcing a vehicle on the major road to stop. As the crossroad vehicle makes the turn and accelerates, field studies have indicated that mainline vehicles reduce their speed to approximately 70% of the mainline design speed to compensate for the entering vehicle.

The intersection sight distance is obtained by providing clear sight triangles both to the right and left as shown in Figure 36-6.A. The lengths of legs of these sight triangles are determined as follows:

1. **Minor Road.** The length of leg along the minor road is based on two parts. The first is the location of the driver’s eye on the minor road. This distance is not wholly based on the location of the stop bar, but instead through research on how far away from through traffic the stopping motorist feels comfortable, even potentially after a two-stop process (stop at stop bar, then pull up and stop at a safe spot closer to the edge of pavement that maximizes sight lines). This distance is typically assumed to be 14.4 ft (4.4 m) from the edge of the major road traveled way, but can be increased due to sight specific issues. The second part is based on the distance to the center of the vehicle on the major road. For right-turning vehicles, this is assumed to be the center of the closest travel lane from the left. For left-turning vehicles, this is assumed to be the center of the closest travel lane for vehicles approaching from the right.
2. **Major Road.** The length of the sight triangle or ISD along the major road is determined using the following equation:

3. \[ b = ISD = 1.467 V_{major} \cdot t_c \] \hspace{1cm} \text{Equation 36-6.1 (US Customary)}

\[ b = ISD = 0.278 V_{major} \cdot t_c \] \hspace{1cm} \text{Equation 36-6.1 (Metric)}

where:
- \( b \) = length of sight triangle along the major road or ISD, ft (m)
- ISD = Intersection Sight Distance, ft (m)
- \( V_{major} \) = design speed of major road, mph (km/hr)
- \( t_c \) = critical gap for entering or crossing the major road, sec

The critical gap time \( (t_c) \) varies according to the design vehicle, the grade on the minor road approach, the number of lanes on the major roadway, the type of operation, and the intersection skew.

Within this clear sight triangle, if practical, remove or lower any object that would obstruct the driver’s view. These objects may include buildings, parked or turning vehicles, trees, hedges, tall crops, unmowed grass, fences, retaining walls, and the actual ground line. In addition, where an interchange ramp or crossroad intersects the major road near a bridge on a crest vertical curve, items such as bridge parapets, piers, abutments, guardrail, or the crest vertical curve itself may restrict the clear sight triangle. Figure 36-6.B illustrates, in both the plan view and profile view, the application of the clear sight triangles at an interchange ramp. This figure also applies to any crossroad intersection.

The height of eye for passenger cars is assumed to be 3.5 ft (1080 mm) above the surface of the minor road. The height of object for an approaching vehicle on the major road is also assumed to be 3.5 ft (1080 mm). An object height of 3.5 ft (1080 mm) assumes that a sufficient portion (9 in. (225 mm)) of an oncoming passenger car must be seen to identify it as an object of concern by the minor road driver. Using the 3.5 ft (1080 mm) height for both vehicles assumes that each driver can see and recognize the other vehicle. If there are a sufficient number of trucks on the minor road or ramp to warrant their consideration, use Figure 36-6.C to determine the appropriate eye height for the minor road vehicle.
CLEAR SIGHT TRIANGLE FOR VIEWING TRAFFIC APPROACHING FROM LEFT

CLEAR SIGHT TRIANGLE FOR VIEWING TRAFFIC APPROACHING FROM RIGHT

CLEAR SIGHT TRIANGLES FOR STOP-CONTROLLED INTERSECTIONS

Figure 36-6.A
36-6.03  **Stop-Controlled Intersections**

Where traffic on the minor road or an exit ramp of an intersection is controlled by stop signs, the driver of the vehicle on the minor road must have adequate sight distance for a safe departure from the stopped position. This assumes that the approaching vehicle comes into view just as the stopped vehicle begins its departure. The following sections discuss the application of the Department’s ISD methodology at stop-controlled intersections.

36-6.03(a)  **Turns Onto Major Roadway**

To determine the intersection sight distance for vehicles turning left or right onto the major road, the designer should use Equation 36-6.1 and the gap times \( t_c \) presented in Figure 36-6.D. Figure 36-6.D also presents adjustments to the gap times for multilane facilities and steep grades on the minor road approach. These adjustments are further discussed below. Figure 36-6.E provides the ISD values for typical design vehicles on two-lane, level facilities. The designer should also consider the following:

1. **Turning Maneuver.** There is only a minimal difference in the base gap acceptance times between the left- and right-turning drivers. Consequently, only one gap time is provided for both the left- and right-turning vehicle onto the major road. See Figure 36-6.B.

2. **Multilane Facilities.** For multilane facilities, the gap acceptance times presented in Figure 36-6.D may need to be adjusted to account for the additional distance required by the turning vehicle to cross the additional lanes or median. The following will apply:

   a. **Left-Turns.** For left-turns onto multilane highways without a median, add 0.5 seconds for passenger cars or 0.7 seconds for trucks for each additional lane from the left, in excess of one, to be crossed by the turning vehicle. Assume that the left-turning driver will enter the left-most travel lane on the far side of the major road.

   b. **Right Turns.** Because the turning vehicle is assumed to be turning into the nearest right through lane, no adjustments to the gap times are required. This is the same for either two-lane or multilane facilities.

   c. **Medians.** Depending on the median width, it also may be necessary to add additional time to the base gap time; see Item 3.
**INTERSECTIONS**

**August 2018**

36-6.5

**INTERSECTION SIGHT DISTANCE CONTROLS**

**Figure 36-6.B**

- **ISD** – intersection sight distance, ft (m)
- **d** – minimum distance needed from back of parapet extension or side of structure to vehicle position, ft (m)
- **do** – when minor road is over
- **du** – when minor road is under
- **A** – maximum algebraic difference of grades (%)
- **L** – length of crest vertical curve, ft (m)
- **W** – width of lane, ft (m)
- **h₁** – height of eye, see Figure 36-6.C
- **h₂** – height of obstacle = 3.5 ft (1080mm) (passenger car assumed)
### Design Vehicles Used to Determine Available ISD Along a Crossroad

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>20-Year ADT of Tractor/ Semitrailers on Exit Ramp or Crossroad</th>
<th>Approaching Vehicle on Mainline(^{(2)})</th>
<th>Stopped Design Vehicle on Crossroad (^{(1)})</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ADT (\leq 40)</td>
<td>Passenger Car (h_2 = 3.5) ft  (h_2 = 1080) mm</td>
<td>Passenger Car (h_1 = 3.5) ft  (h_1 = 1080) mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40 &lt; ADT (\leq 100)</td>
<td>Passenger Car (h_2 = 3.5) ft  (h_2 = 1080) mm</td>
<td>Single Unit (SU) or Bus (h_1 = 6) ft  (h_1 = 1.8) m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADT &gt; 100</td>
<td>Passenger Car (h_2 = 3.5) ft  (h_2 = 1080) mm</td>
<td>Tractor/Semitrailers (MU) (h_1 = 8) ft  (h_1 = 2.5) m</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**

1. \(h_1\) - Assumed height of eye for stopped motorist.
2. \(h_2\) - Assumes 9 in. (225 mm) of top of approaching vehicle can readily be seen by stopped motorist.
3. *Where a mainline crest vertical curve lies close to an intersection of a crossroad or ramp, it may be necessary to increase the length of the vertical curve (designed for either existing or proposed stopping sight distance) or to reduce the grades in order to obtain the proper ISD in the vertical plane.*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Design Vehicle</th>
<th>Gap Acceptance Time ($t_c$) (sec)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Passenger Car</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Single-Unit Truck</td>
<td>9.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tractor/Semitrailer</td>
<td>11.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** Times are for turns onto a two-lane highway without a median and may require adjustments to the base time gaps.

**Adjustments:**

1. **Multiplex Highways.** The following will apply:
   - For left turns onto two-way multiplex highways without a median, add 0.5 seconds for passenger cars or 0.7 seconds for trucks for each additional lane from the left, in excess of one, to be crossed by the turning vehicle. See discussion in Section 36-6.03(a) for additional guidance.
   - For right turns, no adjustment is necessary.

2. **Minor Road Approach Grades.** If the approach grade on the minor road exceeds +3%, the following will apply:
   - For right turns, multiply 0.1 seconds times the actual percent grade on the minor road approach and add this number to the base time gap.
   - For left turns, multiply 0.2 seconds times the actual percent grade on the minor approach and add this number to the base time gap.

3. **Major Road Approach Grade.** Major road grade does not affect calculations.

---

**GAP ACCEPTANCE TIMES**
(Left and Right Turns From Minor Road)

**Figure 36-6.D**
### Design Speed (V_{major})

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Design Speed (V_{major})</th>
<th>ISD</th>
<th>ISD</th>
<th>ISD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Passenger Cars</td>
<td>Single-Unit Trucks</td>
<td>Tractor/Semitrailers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>US Customary</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 mph</td>
<td>225 ft</td>
<td>280 ft</td>
<td>340 ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25 mph</td>
<td>280 ft</td>
<td>350 ft</td>
<td>425 ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 mph</td>
<td>335 ft</td>
<td>420 ft</td>
<td>510 ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35 mph</td>
<td>390 ft</td>
<td>490 ft</td>
<td>595 ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40 mph</td>
<td>445 ft</td>
<td>560 ft</td>
<td>675 ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45 mph</td>
<td>500 ft</td>
<td>630 ft</td>
<td>760 ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50 mph</td>
<td>555 ft</td>
<td>700 ft</td>
<td>845 ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55 mph</td>
<td>610 ft</td>
<td>770 ft</td>
<td>930 ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60 mph</td>
<td>665 ft</td>
<td>840 ft</td>
<td>1015 ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65 mph</td>
<td>720 ft</td>
<td>910 ft</td>
<td>1100 ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70 mph</td>
<td>775 ft</td>
<td>980 ft</td>
<td>1185 ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Metric</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 km/hr</td>
<td>63 m</td>
<td>80 m</td>
<td>96 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40 km/hr</td>
<td>84 m</td>
<td>106 m</td>
<td>128 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50 km/hr</td>
<td>105 m</td>
<td>132 m</td>
<td>160 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60 km/hr</td>
<td>126 m</td>
<td>159 m</td>
<td>192 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70 km/hr</td>
<td>146 m</td>
<td>185 m</td>
<td>224 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80 km/hr</td>
<td>167 m</td>
<td>212 m</td>
<td>256 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90 km/hr</td>
<td>188 m</td>
<td>238 m</td>
<td>288 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 km/hr</td>
<td>209 m</td>
<td>264 m</td>
<td>320 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110 km/hr</td>
<td>230 m</td>
<td>291 m</td>
<td>352 m</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**

1. These ISD values assume turns onto a two-lane facility without a median.
2. These ISD values assume a minor road approach grade ≤ +3%.

**INTERSECTION SIGHT DISTANCES FOR TWO-LANE HIGHWAY**

(Left and Right Turns From Minor Road)

**Figure 36-6.E**
3. **Left Turns Through Medians.**
   
a. **Narrow Medians.** For a facility that does not have a median wide enough to store a stopped design vehicle, divide the median width by 12 ft (3.6 m) to get the corresponding number of lanes and then use the criteria in Item 2a above to determine the additional time factor.

b. **Wide Medians.** For a facility that does have a median wide enough to store a stopped design vehicle, the designer should evaluate the sight distance needed in two separate steps:
   
   • First, with the design vehicle stopped on the side road, use the gap acceptance times for a vehicle turning right or use Figure 36-6.E directly to determine the applicable ISD. Under some circumstances, it may also be necessary to check the straight through crossing maneuver to determine if it is the critical movement. Straight through crossing criteria are discussed in Section 36-6.03(b).

   • Second, with the design vehicle stopped in the median, assume a two-lane roadway design and use the gap acceptance times for a vehicle turning left or use Figure 36-6.E directly to determine the applicable ISD.

   Section 36-6.07 provides an example of school bus crossing a wide median.

4. **Approach Grades.** If the approach grade on the minor road exceeds 3%, see the criteria in Figure 36-6.D.

5. **Trucks.** At some intersections (e.g., near truck stops, interchange ramps, grain elevators), the designer may want to use the truck as the design vehicle for determining the ISD. The gap acceptance times (t<sub>c</sub>) for single-unit and tractor/semitrailer trucks are provided in Figure 36-6.D. Calculated ISD values for two-lane roadways are presented in Figure 36-6.E. The height of eye for these vehicles is discussed in Section 36-6.02 as shown in Figure 36-6.C.

36-6.03(b) **Vehicle Crossing Mainline**

In the majority of cases, the intersection sight distance for a crossing maneuver is less than that required for a left- or right-turning vehicle. However, in the following situations, the straight through crossing sight distance may be the more critical movement:

- where left and/or right-turns are not permitted from a particular approach and the crossing maneuver is the only legal or expected movement (e.g., indirect left turns);

- where the design vehicle must cross more than four travel lanes or, with medians, the equivalent distance; or

- where a substantial volume of heavy vehicles cross the highway and there are steep grades on the minor road approaches.
Use Equation 36-6.1 and the gap acceptance times \((t_c)\) and adjustment factors in Figure 36-6.F to determine the ISD for crossing maneuvers. Where narrow medians are present which cannot store the design vehicle, include the median width in the overall width to determine the applicable gap time. Divide this overall width by 12 ft (3.6 m) to determine the corresponding number of lanes for the crossing maneuver. Add 0.5 seconds for passenger cars or 0.7 seconds for trucks for each additional lane, in excess of two, to be crossed by the design vehicle.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Design Vehicle</th>
<th>Gap Acceptance Time ((t_c)) (sec)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Passenger Car</td>
<td>6.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Single-Unit Truck</td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tractor/Semitrailer</td>
<td>10.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: Times are for crossing a two-lane highway without a median.*

**Adjustments:**

1. **Multilane Highway.** Where the design vehicle is crossing a major road with more than two lanes and/or where there is a narrow median which cannot store the design vehicle, add 0.5 seconds for passenger cars or 0.7 seconds for trucks for each additional lane in excess of two. See the discussion in Section 36-6.03(b) for additional guidance.

2. **Approach Grade.** If the approach grade on the minor road exceeds +3\%, multiply 0.1 seconds times the actual percent grade of the minor road approach and add this number to the base time gap.

**GAP ACCEPTANCE TIMES**
*(Vehicle Crossing Mainline)*

Figure 36-6.F

36-6.03(c) **Four-Way Stop**

At intersections with all-way stop control, provide enough sight distance so that the first stopped vehicle on each approach is visible to all the other approaches. The ISD criteria for left- or right-turning vehicles as discussed in Section 36-6.03(a) are not applicable in this situation. Often intersections are converted to all-way stop control to address limited sight distance at the intersection. Therefore, providing additional sight distance at the intersection is unnecessary.

36-6.04 **Signal-Controlled Intersections**

At signalized intersections, provide sufficient sight distance so that the first vehicle on each approach is visible to all other approaches. Traffic signals are often used at high-volume intersections to address accidents related to restricted sight distances. Therefore, the ISD criteria for left- or right-turning vehicles as discussed in Section 36-6.03(a) is typically not applicable at signalized intersections. However, where right-turn-on-red is allowed, check to see that the ISD as presented in Section 36-6.03(a) for a stop-controlled right-turning vehicle is available to the left. If it is not, this may warrant restricting the right-turn-on-red movement. In addition, if the
traffic signal is placed on two-way flash operation (i.e., flashing amber on the major-road approaches and flashing red on the minor-road approaches) under off-peak or nighttime conditions, provide the ISD criteria as discussed in Section 36-6.03(a) for a stop-controlled intersection.

36-6.05 Left Turns From the Major Road

At all intersections, regardless of the type of traffic control, the designer should consider the sight distance needs for a stopped vehicle turning left from the major road. This situation is illustrated in Figure 36-6.G. The driver will need to see straight ahead for a sufficient distance to turn left and clear the opposing travel lanes before an approaching vehicle reaches the intersection. In general, if the major highway has been designed to meet the stopping sight distance criteria, intersection sight distance only will be a concern where the major road is on a horizontal curve, where there is a median, or where there are opposing vehicles making left turns at an intersection. Sight distance for opposing left turns may be increased by offsetting the left-turn lanes; see Section 36-3.03(c).

Use Equation 36-6.1 and the gap acceptance times (t<sub>c</sub>) from Figure 36-6.H to determine the applicable intersection sight distances for the left-turning vehicle. Where the left-turning vehicle must cross more than one opposing lane, add 0.5 seconds for passenger cars or 0.7 seconds for trucks for each additional lane in excess of one. Where medians are present and the left-turn lanes are not offset, the designer will need to consider the median width in the same manner as discussed in Section 36-6.03. Figure 36-6.I provides the ISD values for typical design vehicles and two common left-turning situations on a facility without a median.
Note: See Section 36-6.05 for discussion and application.
### Design Vehicle | Gap Acceptance Time (tₐ) (sec)
---|---
Passenger Car | 5.5
Single-Unit Truck | 6.5
Tractor/Semitrailer | 7.5

Adjustments: Where left-turning vehicles cross more than one opposing lane, add 0.5 seconds for passenger cars or 0.7 seconds for trucks for each additional lane in excess of one. See Section 36-6.05 for additional guidance on median widths.

**GAP ACCEPTANCE TIMES**
(Left Turns From Major Road)

Figure 36-6.I

36-6.06 **Effect of Skew**

Where it is impractical to realign an intersection which is greater than 30 degrees from perpendicular, adjust the gap acceptance times presented in the above sections to account for the additional travel time required for a vehicle to make a turn or cross a facility. At oblique-angled intersections, determine the actual path length for a turning or crossing vehicle by dividing the total distance of the lanes and/or median to be crossed by the sine of the intersection angle. If the actual path length exceeds the total width of the lanes to be crossed by 12 ft (3.6 m) or more, apply the applicable adjustment factors; see Figure 36-6.J.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Design Speed ($V_{major}$)</th>
<th>ISD</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>US Customary</td>
<td>Metric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Passenger Cars</td>
<td>Single-Unit Trucks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Crossing 1 lane</td>
<td>Crossing 2 lanes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 mph</td>
<td>165 ft</td>
<td>180 ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25 mph</td>
<td>205 ft</td>
<td>225 ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 mph</td>
<td>245 ft</td>
<td>265 ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35 mph</td>
<td>285 ft</td>
<td>310 ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40 mph</td>
<td>325 ft</td>
<td>355 ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45 mph</td>
<td>365 ft</td>
<td>400 ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50 mph</td>
<td>405 ft</td>
<td>445 ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55 mph</td>
<td>445 ft</td>
<td>490 ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60 mph</td>
<td>490 ft</td>
<td>530 ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65 mph</td>
<td>530 ft</td>
<td>575 ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70 mph</td>
<td>570 ft</td>
<td>620 ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 km/hr</td>
<td>50 m</td>
<td>50 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40 km/hr</td>
<td>65 m</td>
<td>67 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50 km/hr</td>
<td>77 m</td>
<td>84 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60 km/hr</td>
<td>92 m</td>
<td>100 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70 km/hr</td>
<td>107 m</td>
<td>117 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80 km/hr</td>
<td>123 m</td>
<td>134 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90 km/hr</td>
<td>138 m</td>
<td>150 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 km/hr</td>
<td>153 m</td>
<td>167 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110 km/hr</td>
<td>169 m</td>
<td>184 m</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Assumes no median on major road.
SIGHT DISTANCE AT SKewed INTERSECTIONS

**Figure 36-6.K**

![Diagram showing sight distance calculations for skewed intersections.](image)

**Equation:**

\[ W_1 = \frac{W_2 \cdot \cos \theta}{\sin \theta} \]

Where:
- \( W_1 \): Major road traveled way width, ft (m)
- \( W_2 \): Adjusted width for skew, ft (m)
- \( \theta \): Intersection angle
36-6.07 Examples of ISD Applications

The following three examples illustrate the application of the ISD criteria:

Example 36-6.07(1)

Given:  
- Minor road intersects a four-lane highway with a TWLTL.  
- Minor road is stop controlled and intersects major road at 90 degrees.  
- Design speed of the major highway is 45 mph.  
- All travel lane widths are 12 ft.  
- The TWLTL width is 12 ft.  
- Grade on minor road is 1%.  
- Trucks are not a concern.

Problem:  
Determine the intersection sight distance needed to the left and right of the minor road; see Figure 36-6.B.

Solution:

1. For the passenger car turning right, the ISD to the left can be determined directly from Figure 36-6.E, because the right-turning motorist is assumed to turn into the near lane. For the 45 mph design speed, the ISD to the left is 500 ft.

2. For the passenger car turning left, the ISD to the right must reflect the additional time required to cross the additional lanes and TWLTL; see in Section 36-6.03(a). The following will apply:
   a. First, determine the extra width required by the one additional travel lane and the TWLTL and divide this number by 12 ft:
      \[
      \frac{(12 + 12)}{12} = 2 \text{ lanes}
      \]
   b. Next, multiply the number of lanes by 0.5 seconds to determine the additional time required:
      \[(2 \text{ lanes})(0.5 \text{ sec/lane}) = 1.0 \text{ second}\]
   c. Add the additional time to the basic gap time of 7.5 seconds and insert this value into Equation 36-6.1:
      \[
      \text{ISD} = (1.467)(45)(7.5 + 1.0) = 561 \text{ ft}
      \]
      Provide an ISD of 561 ft to the right for the left-turning vehicle.

3. Check the passenger vehicle crossing the mainline, as discussed in Section 36-6.03(b). The following will apply:
a. First determine the extra width required by the two additional travel lanes and the TWLTL and divide this number by 12 ft:

\[
\frac{(12 + 12 + 12)}{12} = 3.0 \text{ lanes}
\]

b. Next, multiply the number of lanes by 0.5 seconds to determine the additional time required:

\[(3.0 \text{ lanes})(0.5 \text{ sec/lane}) = 1.5 \text{ seconds}\]

c. Add the additional time to the basic gap time of 6.5 seconds and insert this value into Equation 36-6.1:

\[
\text{ISD} = (1.467)(45)(6.5 + 1.5) = 530 \text{ ft}
\]

The 530 ft for the crossing maneuver is less than the 561 ft required for the left-turning vehicle and, therefore, is not the critical maneuver.

4. Prepare a scaled drawing in the horizontal and vertical planes and graphically check to determine if the applicable ISD is available.

Example 36-6.07(2)

Given: Minor road intersects a four-lane divided highway. Minor road is stop controlled and intersects major road at 90 degrees. Design speed of the major highway is 60 mph. All travel lane widths are 12 ft. The median width is 50 ft. Grade on minor road is +2%. The design vehicle is a 64-passenger school bus that is 35.8 ft long.

Problem: Determine the intersection sight distance needed to the left and right of the minor road; see Figure 36-6.B.

Solution:

1. For a school bus, assume a SU design vehicle for gap acceptance times.

2. For the school bus turning right, the ISD to the left can be determined directly from Figure 36-6.E. For the 60 mph design speed, the ISD to the left is 840 ft.

3. Determine if the straight through crossing maneuver is critical; see Section 36-6.03(b). No adjustments are required to the base time of 8.5 seconds. Therefore, use Equation 36-6.1 directly:

\[
\text{ISD} = (1.467)(60)(8.5) = 750 \text{ ft}
\]
The crossing maneuver ISD is less than the right-turning maneuver and, therefore, is not critical.

4. For the school bus turning left, it can be assumed the school bus can safely stop in the median (i.e., 50 ft minus 35.8 ft). The ISD to the right can be determined directly from Figure 36-6.E. For the 60 mph design speed, the ISD to the right for the left turn is 840 ft. The crossing maneuver will not be critical.

5. Prepare a scaled drawing in the horizontal and vertical planes and graphically check to determine if the applicable ISD is available.

Example 36-6.07(3)

Given: Minor road intersects a four-lane divided highway. Minor road is stop controlled and intersects major road at 90°. Design speed of the major highway is 50 mph. All travel lane widths are 12 ft. Existing median width is 48 ft. Traffic signals are likely within 10 years. Current mainline ADT is 1600 and left-turn volumes exceed 60 vph. Trucks are not a concern.

Problem: Determine the intersection design and sight distance for a vehicle turning left from the major road.

Solution:

1. From Section 36-3.03(c), the recommended left-turn lane design is a tapered offset left-turn lane.

2. Because the offset left-turn lane design places vehicles near the median edge of the opposing lanes, no adjustment is necessary for the median width in computing the gap acceptance time.

3. For the left-turning vehicle, the ISD can be determined directly from Figure 36-6.I. For the 50 mph design speed and crossing two lanes, the required ISD is 480 ft.

4. Prepare a scaled drawing in the horizontal and vertical planes and graphically check to determine if the applicable ISD is available.
36-7  DRIVEWAYS, ENTRANCES, AND MINOR SIDEROADS

Section 36-7.01 discusses the design of proposed driveways, entrances, and minor side road approaches to State highways; as well as modifying the connections of existing driveway, entrance, or minor side road approaches to State highways in conjunction with new construction, reconstruction, or 3R highway projects.

Chapter 5 and the Bureau of Operations’ Maintenance Policy Manual provide information regarding necessary local agency agreements and maintenance obligations on state highway projects with side roads or local participation.

Section 36-7.02 provides general information regarding the highway access permit process for new or revised individual entrances to a State highway. For detailed information regarding requirements for the construction or modification of permitted access to State Highways or the access permit process in general, refer to the Bureau of Operations publication entitled, Handbook for the Policy on Permits for Access Driveways to State Highways. The information in the Handbook is governed by the Illinois Highway Code sections 605 ILCS 5/4-209, 4-210, 4-211 and 4-212 and 92 Ill. Admin. Code 550.

For information regarding access management concepts, objectives, benefits, and techniques, see Chapter 35.

For additional access management concepts applicable to Strategic Regional Arterials, see Chapter 46.

36-7.01  General Considerations

The Department has the authority to make access revisions pursuant to the Illinois Highway Code, 605 ILCS 5/4-211. During the design of highway reconstruction projects or when changes in operational conditions warrant review and potential revisions, sideroads, driveways and entrances to public or non-public facilities may be altered, relocated, or eliminated after notification and appropriate discussion with the local agency or property owner. (For public connections to State highways, public involvement may be required. See Chapter 19). Any such revisions will typically be accomplished at Department expense for existing access locations that are legally permitted. Owners or developers who construct access facilities not in accordance with the approved access permit or without an access permit, must correct or remove the access within a specified period of time as directed by the Department; otherwise the Department will cause the removal or closure of the access facility at the owner’s expense.

Although all types of property tracts need access to and from public roadways and are guaranteed that right by the Illinois Highway Code, 605 ILCS 5/4-209, 4-210, 4-211, 4-212, the nature of that need varies according to the type of facility (see 605 ILCS 5/8-102, 8-103 regarding access to freeways), land use (e.g., agricultural, industrial, commercial, or residential), the characteristics of the mainline roadway (urban, suburban, or rural), and safety considerations. Details of the access design depend on factors such as the volume of traffic, the types of vehicles using the entrance, and adjacent compatible land uses.
In all cases for new construction, reconstruction, or 3R projects, district staff are required as part of the roadway project to examine what changes are needed to existing side roads, entrances and driveways, and to document any recommended changes in the Phase I Engineering Report. See Chapter 11 for Phase I Engineering Report guidelines. The designer must exercise good judgment that reflects an understanding of traffic characteristics when categorizing a particular entrance and applying appropriate design standards.

36-7.01(a) Definitions

The following definitions are used in the design of driveways, entrances, and side roads. Note for the purposes of this section, the terms “entrance” and “driveway” will be used interchangeably.

1. Access Facility. A driveway, entrance, or side road approach facilitating vehicular movement between abutting property or right-of-way and a State highway. Normally, it includes only the part of the driveway, entrance, or side road that lies within the established right-of-way limits of the State highway.

2. Commercial Entrance (CE). A driveway that provides access to a single property or business being used for commercial purposes (such as office, retail, or services) or industrial purposes, or provides access for more than a single-family residence or duplex, or more than two single family residences sharing a common entrance.

3. High-Volume Commercial Entrance. A driveway that provides access to a development with substantially more trips than average commercial generators. Such developments are characterized by large parking areas, high-type access facilities, and traffic volumes of sufficient magnitude to have a pronounced effect on the safety and capacity of adjacent streets and highways. Examples of high-volume commercial generators include shopping centers, industrial complexes, office parks, and sports stadiums.

4. Non-Commercial Entrance. A driveway that provides access to a single-family residence, a duplex, or to not more than two single family residences on adjacent properties which are served by a common entrance. Also provides access to agricultural land, including field entrances, but excluding entrances used for the sale of agricultural products to the general public.

5. Private Entrance (PE). A special type of non-commercial access facility that provides access to a single-family residence, or to not more than two single family residences on adjacent properties which are served by a common entrance.

6. Field Entrance (FE). A special type of non-commercial access facility that provides access to land for agricultural uses.

7. Street or Side Road Approach. A special type of access facility that provides a direct connection between a State highway and an intersecting public road.
36-7.01(b) Construction Projects Involving Proposed Entrances

New entrance design practices should consider the following concerns and variables:

- Convenient and safe vehicle ingress and egress;
- Functional classification and design/posted speeds of mainline;
- ADT’s and heavy vehicle percentages of mainline and entrance;
- Access control limits, density of access points, and mainline roadway operations;
- Proposed parcel usage and size of entrance design vehicle;
- Interactions with other nearby entrances or side streets;
- Accessibility and safety of all pedestrians (including individuals with disabilities), and incorporation of proper ADA requirements;
- Interactions where bicycle lanes or side paths are present;
- Interactions where public transportation stops are in the vicinity of the driveway;
- Terrain and drainage; and
- Visibility and sight distance requirements.

These considerations will affect entrance geometric design details such as alignment, entry shape (radius returns or side flares), width, grade, and cross slope, in addition to related design items such as sidewalk or bike path alignment and the location of first available parking bays beyond the entrance.

See Figure 36-7.A for general design guidelines for proposed entrances and driveways abutting the State highway system. Also see Sections 36-7.01(d) – (g) of this manual and the Handbook for the Policy on Permits for Access Driveways to State Highways for additional design information specific to IDOT. Additionally, NCHRP Report 659 provides detailed guidance for the geometric design of new driveways and entrances.

36-7.01(c) Construction Projects Involving Existing Entrances

When the Department undertakes the improvement of an existing roadway, district staff must examine limits of the entire project for safety, sight distance, and operational issues. In all cases for new construction, reconstruction, or 3R type projects, the designer is required to examine what changes are needed to existing side roads, major entrances, and driveways, and to document any recommended changes in the Phase I Engineering Report. See Chapter 11 for Phase I Engineering Report guidelines. For any existing entrance that does not meet design, safety or operational criteria, contact the property owner during the project development phase to discuss the potential or observed issues, historical crash data, and current safety analyses of the subject location. Identify and discuss potential solutions for closing, reconstructing, or realigning the entrance to improve safety and operational objectives. Do not allow such substandard entrances to remain without addressing the issues.
For basic design parameters to remain in place for various entrance types, see Figure 36-7.A. See also Sections 36-7.01(d) – (g) of this manual, the *Handbook for the Policy on Permits for Access Driveways to State Highways* and *NCHRP Report 659* for additional design information.

### 36-7.01(d) Construction Projects Involving Proposed Sideroads

Construction projects involving proposed sideroads intersecting a State highway should adhere to the following procedures, depending on project scope:

- For new sideroads being constructed through the development process, follow the general procedures for driveway and entrance permits; see Section 36-7.02 and the *Handbook for the Policy on Permits for Access Driveways to State Highways*.
- For new sideroad intersections being constructed as part of the state highway improvement, follow the design guidelines set forth throughout Chapter 36, as well as either New Construction/Reconstruction or 3R guidelines, as appropriate.
- For new sideroad intersections being constructed as a locally led project, see the *Bureau of Local Roads and Streets Manual*.

### 36-7.01(e) Construction Projects Involving Existing Sideroads

Construction projects involving existing sideroads intersecting a State highway should adhere to the following procedures, depending on project scope:

- Intersections with existing sideroads should be evaluated on all New Construction/Reconstruction projects using the design criteria presented throughout Chapter 36. Revisions should be made to the existing facility when operational and safety factors dictate.
- Intersections with existing sideroads should be evaluated on all 3R projects using the criteria presented in Section 49-3.06. Revisions should be made to the existing facility when operational and safety factors dictate.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WIDTH OF DRIVE</th>
<th>NON-COMMERCIAL RURAL</th>
<th>NON-COMMERCIAL URBAN</th>
<th>COMMERCIAL RURAL</th>
<th>COMMERCIAL URBAN</th>
<th>INDUSTRIAL-COMMERCIAL-RECREATIONAL HIGH-VOLUME TRAFFIC GENERATORS</th>
<th>STREETS AND SIDE ROADS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12’ Min. (1)</td>
<td>12’ Min.</td>
<td>35’ Max.</td>
<td>35’ Max.</td>
<td>2 @ 24’ or 35’ Max.</td>
<td>30’ Min. (Urban) 24’ Min. (Rural)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24’ Max.</td>
<td>24’ Max.</td>
<td>(60’ Max. at 6’ from Edge of Pavement)</td>
<td>(85’ Max. at Face of Curb)</td>
<td>2 @ 24’ or 35’ Max.</td>
<td>30’ Min. (Urban) 24’ Min. (Rural)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RADII OF FLARE</td>
<td>10’ Min. (2)</td>
<td>5’ Min. (2)</td>
<td>10’ Min. (2)</td>
<td>10’ Min. (2)</td>
<td>30’ - 50’ or 3-Centered Curve</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30’ Max.</td>
<td>30’ Max.</td>
<td>40’ Max.</td>
<td>25’ Max.</td>
<td>25’ Max.</td>
<td>30’ - 50’ or 3-Centered Curve</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15’ Max.</td>
<td>15’ Max.</td>
<td>5’ Min. (2)</td>
<td>10’ Min. (2)</td>
<td>10’ Min. (2)</td>
<td>30’ - 50’ or 3-Centered Curve</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANGLE OF DRIVE</td>
<td>60°-90°</td>
<td>45°-90° (3)</td>
<td>60°-90°</td>
<td>60°-90°</td>
<td>60°-90°</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISLAND AREA</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>10’ Min. at ROW 5’ Min. Radius (10’ Min. 6’ from Edge of Pavement)</td>
<td>6’ Min. at Edge of Pavement and at ROW 5’ Min. Radius</td>
<td>4’ - 18’ Wide Median</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DISTANCE FROM PROPERTY LINE</td>
<td>0’ Min.</td>
<td>5’ Min. (6’ from Edge of Pavement)</td>
<td>3’ Min.</td>
<td>10’ Min.</td>
<td>---</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(to any part of driveway or flare)</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DISTANCE FROM INTERSECTING STREET (edge of road to beginning of driveway flare)</td>
<td>50’ Min.</td>
<td>5’ Min. (4)</td>
<td>50’ Min.</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>100’ Min.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5’ min. from beginning of flare to extension of intersecting road ROW</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DISTANCE BETWEEN DRIVES</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>10’ Min. (6’ from Edge of Pavement and at ROW)</td>
<td>6’ min. (At Edge of Pavement and at ROW)</td>
<td>440’ Min. 660’ Desirable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

HORIZONTAL DESIGN GUIDELINES FOR ENTRANCES, DRIVEWAYS AND SIDE ROADS

Figure 36-7.A
(US Customary)
(1 of 3)
Notes:

(1) The desirable width of field entrances (FE’s) is 24’ to allow for the use of oversized farm implements.
(2) Non-commercial and low to moderate volume commercial entrances may be designed with a straight flare rather than radius.
(3) 45° angle of intersection is permitted only for one-way drives. 60° is minimum for two-way drives.
(4) This dimension is the undisturbed length of curb between the driveway flare and intersecting street flare.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>NON-COMMERCIAL RURAL</th>
<th>NON-COMMERCIAL URBAN</th>
<th>COMMERCIAL RURAL</th>
<th>COMMERCIAL URBAN</th>
<th>INDUSTRIAL-COMMERCIAL-RECREATIONAL HIGH-VOLUME TRAFFIC GENERATORS</th>
<th>STREETS AND SIDEROADS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>WIDTH OF DRIVE</strong></td>
<td>3.6 m Min. (1)</td>
<td>7.2 m Max.</td>
<td>10.6 m Max.</td>
<td>10.6 m Max.</td>
<td>2 @ 7.2 m or 10.6 m Max.</td>
<td>9.1 m Min. (Urban)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(18.3 m Max. at 1.8 m from Edge of Pavement)</td>
<td>(25.9 m Max. at Face of Curb)</td>
<td>(1.8 m from Edge of Pavement)</td>
<td>7.2 m Min. (Rural)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>RADII OF FLARE</strong></td>
<td>3.0 m Min. (2)</td>
<td>1.5 m Min. (2)</td>
<td>3.0 m Min. (2)</td>
<td>3.0 m Min. (2)</td>
<td>9.1 m - 15 m or 3-Centered Curve</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9.1 m Max.</td>
<td>4.6 m Max.</td>
<td>12.2 m Max.</td>
<td>7.6 m Mix.</td>
<td>9.1 m - 15 m or 3-Centered Curve</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ANGLE OF DRIVE</strong></td>
<td>60°-90°</td>
<td>45°-90° (3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ISLAND AREA</strong></td>
<td>---</td>
<td>3.0 m Min. at ROW</td>
<td>1.8 m Min. at Edge of Pavement</td>
<td>1.8 m Min. at Edge of Pavement and at ROW</td>
<td>1.8 m Min. at Edge of Pavement and at ROW</td>
<td>1.2 m - 5.4 m Wide Median</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.5 m Min. (3)</td>
<td>1.5 m Min.</td>
<td>1.5 m Min.</td>
<td>1.5 m Min. Radius (3.0 m Min. at 1.8 m from Edge of Pavement)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.5 m Min. (3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>900 mm Min.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DISTANCE FROM PROPERTY LINE (to any part of driveway or flare)</strong></td>
<td>0.0 m Min.</td>
<td>1.5 m Min. (3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>900 mm Min.</td>
<td>3.0 m Min.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(1.8 m from Edge of Pavement)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DISTANCE FROM INTERSECTING STREET (edge of road to beginning of driveway flare)</strong></td>
<td>15 m Min.</td>
<td>1.5 m Min. (4)</td>
<td>15 m Min.</td>
<td>---</td>
<td></td>
<td>30 m Min.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.5 m Min. (4)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.5 m Min. from beginning of flare to extension of intersecting road ROW</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DISTANCE BETWEEN DRIVES</strong></td>
<td>---</td>
<td>3.0 m Min. (3)</td>
<td>1.8 m Min. (At Edge of Pavement and at ROW)</td>
<td>1.8 m Min. (At Edge of Pavement and at ROW)</td>
<td>135 m Min. 200 m Desirable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

HORIZONTAL DESIGN GUIDELINES FOR ENTRANCES, DRIVEWAYS AND SIDE ROADS (Metric)
Figure 36-7.A
(1 of 3)
Notes:

(1) The desirable width of field entrances (FE’s) is 7.2 m to allow for the use of oversized farm implements.

(2) Non-commercial and low to moderate volume commercial entrances may be designed with a straight flare rather than radius.

(3) 45° angle of intersection is permitted only for one-way drives. 60° is minimum for two-way drives.

(4) This dimension is the undisturbed length of curb between the driveway flare and intersecting street flare.
HORIZONTAL DESIGN GUIDELINES FOR ENTRANCES, DRIVeways AND SIDE ROADS

Figure 36-7.A

(Figure Parameters)

(3 of 3)
**36-7.01(f) Driveway Profiles**

An important item to consider in the design of new entrances or the evaluation of existing entrances is the change in grade without a vertical curve.

Desirably, vertical curves should be used to connect slopes of different grades. Where the change in grade of the entrance is critical, the designer should insert a vertical curve to prevent a vehicle from bottoming out. To prevent drag, vertical curves should be used where a hump or dip is greater than 6 inches (150 mm) within a wheel base length of approximately 10 ft (3.0 m). To prevent center or overhang drag, with some allowance for load and bounce, crest vertical curves should not exceed a 3 inch (80 mm) hump in a 10 foot (3.0 m) chord, and sag vertical curves should not exceed a 2 inch (50 mm) depression in a 10 foot (3.0 m) chord. Based on these constraints, the maximum grade on driveways, and the maximum algebraic difference in grade where an omission of a vertical curve may be considered, are shown in Figure 36-7.B.

If sidewalks intersect with the driveway profile, the profile must be adjusted to fit policy sidewalk slope criteria. See Figure 36-7.C and the *Illinois Highway Standards* for compliant sidewalk details. Also Chapter 58 provides additional accessibility discussion.

For considerations in the design of sideroad profiles, see Section 36-1.06.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Maximum Grade on Driveway Proper</th>
<th>Non-Commercial Rural</th>
<th>Non-Commercial Urban</th>
<th>Commercial Rural</th>
<th>Commercial Urban</th>
<th>High-Volume Commercial Entrance</th>
<th>Streets and Roads</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12% (1)</td>
<td>8% (1)</td>
<td>10% (1)</td>
<td>6% (1)</td>
<td>4% (1)</td>
<td>Design as a Local Road</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Maximum Algebraic Difference in Grades where Omission of Vertical Curve may be Considered | 6% | 8% | 3% | 6% 
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|----|----|----|

(1) Note: If sidewalk or a side path is present adjacent to the entrance, the entrance grade used shall be broken to allow the extension of the sidewalk or side path through the entrance at a maximum cross slope of 2% (1.5% preferred). See Figure 36-7.C.

**VERTICAL PROFILE GUIDELINES FOR ENTRANCES, DRIVEWAYS AND SIDE ROADS**

*Figure 36-7.B*
PROFILES FOR URBAN DRIVEWAYS
(ASSUMES PARALLEL SIDEWALK OR SIDEPATH)

\[ S_1 = +1.5\% \text{ MIN.}\]
\[ +6.0\% \text{ MAX., COMMERCIAL}\]
\[ +8.0\% \text{ MAX., NON-COMMERCIAL}\]

\[ S_2 = +1.5\% \text{ PREFERRED}\]
\[ +2.0\% \text{ MAX.}\]

DRIVEWAY APRON
DESCENDING APPROACH

\[ * \text{ 5" (Typ.) (4" MIN.) FOR SIDEWALK}\]
\[ 7" - 12" TYP. FOR SIDE PATH (SEE FIG. 17.2.T)\]

PROFILES FOR RURAL DRIVEWAYS
(ASSUMES NO PARALLEL SIDEWALK OR SIDEPATH)

10' MIN.
20' V.C. MIN.

PAVED SHOULDER

ASCENDING OR DESCENDING APPROACH

TYPICAL ENTRANCE PROFILES

Figure 36-7.C
36-7.01(g) **Driveway Sight Distance**

Section 36-6 discusses intersection sight distance (ISD) criteria for State highway intersections with public roads on new construction or reconstruction projects. Section 49-3.06(e) discusses intersection sight distance criteria for State highway intersections with public roads on 3R projects.

Desirably, these criteria, depending on project type, will also apply to intersection sight distances for exiting vehicles at driveways and entrances, however, the use of full intersection criteria may not always be practicable. It is important to check for sight obstructions (e.g., buildings, trees, hedges, bushes, fences, signs) in the vicinity of the driveway entrance which may restrict sight lines, and to reduce sight line constraints to the extent possible. To perform the check for exiting vehicles, it is reasonable to assume an eye location of approximately 12 ft (3.6 m) from the edge of traveled way. As a minimum, provide stopping sight distance (SSD) for an approaching vehicle on the traveled way to an exiting vehicle at a driveway. Locations of non-compliant sight distance identified during project development must still meet the lesser 3R SSD requirements found in Section 49-3.06(e). When driveway sight distance cannot be provided to the minimum 3R distances, note and discuss this issue at a district coordination meeting with warrant justification and documentation as a Level Two design exception. See Section 31-7 regarding the design exception process.

36-7.01(h) **Auxiliary Lanes**

Consider using deceleration and acceleration lanes at high-volume commercial entrances, especially on high speed or high volume arterials. Section 36-3 further discusses the design and guidelines for using auxiliary lanes. In addition to traffic-volume considerations, it may be necessary to provide a right-turn lane into a driveway if the change in grade is abrupt at the driveway entrance. Where a separate right-turn lane is provided, no part of the auxiliary lane taper should encroach on the radius return of an adjacent intersecting side road.

36-7.01(i) **Typical Entrance Drawings**

Closely spaced or improperly designed entrances may cause operational problems, especially when high volume roadways and/or high-volume driveways are involved. Also, operational and safety problems can result if driveways are located too close to side road intersections. As an aide in the design process, typical drawings have been developed and provided for various access scenarios. See the following for additional information:

- Illustrations 2 and 4 through 10 of the *Handbook for the Policy on Permits for Access Driveways to State Highways* provide typical entrance drawings applicable to both the design and permitting processes.
- Figures 35-7.E and 46-2.C give examples of right-in/right-out channelized driveways, which may be an effective alternative in improving safety and operations for entrances in close proximity to intersections.
- Figures 35-7.B through 35-7.I provide details of general access management scenarios that can be applied to commercial entrance design.
NO VEHICULAR ACCESS SHOULD BE ALLOWED THROUGH THIS ENTIRE AREA AS USUALLY DEFINED IN THE ACCESS AGREEMENT.

STOP SIGN CONTROL ASSUMED
END OF RESTRICTED ACCESS

STOP SIGN CONTROL ASSUMED

PROPOSED R.O.W. AND/OR ACCESS RESTRICTION LINE
END OF RESTRICTED ACCESS

PROPOSED R.O.W. AND/OR ACCESS RESTRICTION LINE

PROPOSED R.O.W. AND/OR ACCESS RESTRICTION LINE

NO VEHICULAR ACCESS SHOULD BE ALLOWED THROUGH THIS AREA AS USUALLY DEFINED IN THE ACCESS AGREEMENT.

USE AN 18" (45,7 cm) WIDE RAISED CURB MEDIAN WITH M-6.12 (M-15.3 cm) CURB & GUTTER FOR DELINEATION, SIGN PLACEMENT, AND FUTURE SPACE FOR A LEFT-TURN LANE.

PROPOSED R.O.W. DEDICATED AS NECESSARY TO ACCOMMODATE RIGHT-TURN LANE.

EXISTING R.O.W.

RAISED CURB MEDIAN

STATE HIGHWAY

TRAFFIC SIGNALS USUALLY REQUIRED AT THIS INTERSECTION

IF A FUTURE ENTRANCE IS CONSTRUCTED ON THIS SIDE OF A STATE HIGHWAY, ALL LINES MUST BE CONSTRUCTED OR RECONSTRUCTED TO LINE UP ACROSS THE INTERSECTION.

NOTE: THE DISTRICT GEOMETRICS ENGINEER WILL DETERMINE THE PROPER DISTANCE FOR THIS DIMENSION AFTER ANALYZING TRAFFIC OPERATIONS AND PERFORMING A CAPACITY ANALYSIS ON THE TWO CLOSELY SPACED INTERSECTIONS.

TYPICAL HIGH VOLUME COMMERCIAL ENTRANCE
(TEE INTERSECTION TO A STATE HIGHWAY WITH NO ACCESS CONTROL)
Figure 36-7.D
Entrances to major developments adjacent to State highways are designed using the same criteria required for street intersections. Figure 36-7.D shows a typical design for a high-volume commercial entrance to a State highway. Modifications of this typical design are possible and would be dependent on specific factors such as the classification of the State highway, traffic flow characteristics of the two closely spaced intersections, results of a capacity analysis, potential for safety issues, and the potential immediate or future need for traffic signals on the ring road resulting in the need for proper vehicular storage.

36-7.02 Entrance/Driveway Access Permit Process

The State statutes listed in Section 36-7.01 grant the Department authority to permit driveways and entrances to State highways. The IDOT Bureau of Operations publication entitled, Handbook for the Policy on Permits for Access Driveways to State Highways contains the detailed procedures for obtaining new or revised access to State highways. The general procedure is noted below.

1. General Permitting Procedures. An access permit is required for the construction of any new access facility, or the revision of an existing access facility, within the right-of-way of a State highway when the work is to be done by any person or agency other than the Department. Such proposed entrance work is reviewed by district staff to ensure conformance with Departmental policies.

Access permits are issued by the permit's unit of the appropriate district office. In some cases where the curbing along a State highway is maintained by a municipality, permits for access work may be issued by that municipality with the Department's concurrence. The district office will advise an applicant of the appropriate issuing authority. In all cases where the proposed access is to a State highway, final jurisdiction concerning the permit will remain with the Department. No work shall be undertaken on State right-of-way until the person or agency has received an approved access permit and after a notice is provided to the permits unit that driveway construction is to begin.

An approved access permit only covers the use of entrances, driveways, and/or side roads for land uses as permitted. Changes in land use, land use density, or ownership typically void any individual permit and necessitate new permit applications. Within a development, access to individual parcels subsequently established must be by internal circulation. Therefore, include all phased development as part of an original permit in order to maintain the integrity of the access facility and avoid the reconstruction of the access facility in the future.

2. Procedures for Platting Developments. In accordance with the Plat Act, 765 ILCS 205/2, for municipalities with population less than one million, the local agency must submit the plat to the appropriate district’s plats and plans office for approval, and the Department has 90 days to respond to the submittal in writing. Failure by the Department to respond within 90 days, once submitted, allows the public agency to approve the plat without Departmental concurrence. For municipalities with population greater than one million, Department approval is not required for the local agency to approve the plat, although
coordination with the Department is preferable to assure overall conformance to local and Departmental policies on land subdivision, safety, and access control.

3. Procedures for Major Developments. The approval process for a proposed access facility to a major development adjacent to a State highway is a two-part process.

The first part of the approval process for major developments involves initial planning. During this first phase, a traffic study, intersection design study, and hydraulic study may be required to be submitted by the developer for review and approval to both State and local roadway agencies.

The developer is required to meet and discuss the proposed development with the Department’s district personnel prior to beginning such studies. It is recommended that appropriate local roadway agency representatives also be in attendance in order to discuss additional local regulations and access requirements. This preliminary meeting is held to discuss the Department’s access permitting process and policy requirements well in advance of the developer’s decisions on final arrangement of buildings, internal driveways, and parking facilities, and must involve the entire developable area rather than only a portion of the property or only along the State highway frontage of the proposed development. This helps to ensure that proposed access to the facility will operate satisfactorily beyond any proposed initial phase of development. The preliminary discussions provide a proposed framework for the required analysis and also help to ensure that the final entrance location(s) to the State highway and proposed layout of the development will be acceptable to both the Department and municipality, while also compatible with adjacent land development.

The meeting discussion should also include the need for, and requirements of, hydraulic, traffic, and intersection design studies for the proposed development. These studies shall be completed by the developer’s engineering consultant at the developer’s expense and submitted to the district’s permit unit for review, coordination, and approval. The permits unit will forward the studies to other district bureaus and units as necessary for adequate review to ensure all Departmental policies are met.

The planning documents that may need to be submitted, depending on project scope and size, are:

a. **Hydraulic Study.** Drainage collected by ditches, gutters, or pipes on private property shall not be discharged into the highway drainage system unless expressly approved by the Department. The hydraulic study must include all calculations necessary in assessing stormwater run-off for the proposed facility and for mitigating potential increases in flow or flow-rate onto the State system. The study must show that proposed storm water detention is provided on private property and that runoff which enters the State’s drainage system does not exceed that which naturally occurs from the property to be developed.

b. **Traffic Study.** The traffic study must project traffic being generated by the proposed development out to a 20-year design life from the date of proposed
construction (as mandated in Figure 31-4.A), assess warrants for the potential mitigation of development traffic through permitted improvements such as the addition of travel lanes or traffic signals, and propose potential locations of development ingress/egress that meet Department operational and safety criteria for both the mainline and side road or entrance. Depending on traffic being generated by the proposed development, the developer’s engineer may need to analyze additional intersections adjacent to the proposed development to assess potential impacts to capacity and public safety. These requirements will be discussed at the initial meeting with the Department.

After the initial meeting, and only after total site traffic is submitted to and reviewed and approved by district personnel, shall the developer’s engineering consultant use the capacity analysis results of the traffic study to assess and recommend proposed locations of optimal ingress/egress, and the need, in accordance with IDOT policy, for mitigation of development traffic through permitted improvements. Potential improvements may consist of additional lanes or existing lane extensions (both through and/or turn lanes) or modifications to existing traffic control, including the addition of traffic signals or proposed changes to existing traffic signal timing.

c. Intersection Design Study. Only after completion and approval of the traffic study, can work begin on the intersection design study (IDS), if required. See Chapter 14 for IDS warrants and requirements.

The second part of the approval process for major developments involves the preparation of detailed design construction plans for the entrance or new intersection. The detailed design, including intersection or entrance details and design of the stormwater runoff and detention system(s) for the development, must be one which provides good service to users while at the same time minimizes interference to the safe and efficient movement of through highway traffic. This second part of the process requires obtaining an entrance permit pursuant to the Illinois Highway Code, 605 ILCS 5/4-210. See the Handbook for the Policy on Permits for Access Driveways to State Highways for a typical example of a highway permit application. See Figure 36-7.D for a typical example of an entrance to a major development.

In addition to the guidelines listed above, an Access Agreement is also required for most major developments. The district permits unit will be responsible for preparing and finalizing an Access Agreement with the developer. See the Handbook for the Policy on Permits for Access Driveways to State Highways for a typical example of an Access Agreement. The Access Agreement must be signed by the developer before an access permit can be issued for this type of entrance or new intersection.

4. Access Restrictions for Major Developments. With any new major access point, it is important to consider managing access to the development to preserve the operational integrity of the highway system. This is most easily achieved by an entrance or side road design which will minimize the likelihood of traffic queuing out onto the highway from the development and will not provide inordinate vehicular delay or deficient levels of service through the standard 20-year design period. See Section 31-4.02 regarding design year
selection. See Section 31-4.04 regarding Level of Service criteria.

As an aide to ensure operational integrity of both routes upon initial construction of the proposed development and in the future, a restriction to full access should be created along the proposed development entrance or side road for a sufficient distance beyond the nearest mainline edge of travel way. This access restriction dimension is typically established at 300 ft (90 m) minimum, but can be increased as needed based on proposed side road traffic and capacity; see Figure 36-7.D. The access restriction is generally defined within the Intersection Design Study completed for the proposed intersection, and is also placed as a note and dimension on the subdivision plat at the time of development. The access restriction is then established as part of the plat of right-of-way dedication for the proposed entrance or side road following general Land Acquisition guidelines. For more on the Department’s access management principles; see Section 35-6.
INTERSECTION DESIGN NEAR RAILROADS

These design guidelines apply to all State highway geometric improvement projects where the route is adjacent and parallel to a railroad. Where an at-grade railroad crossing is within 200 ft (60 m) of an intersection, the design should address efforts to keep vehicles from stopping or storing on the tracks. This applies to either signal- or stop-controlled intersections. Intersection designs within 200 ft (60 m) of a grade crossing, or greater than 200 ft (60 m), if capacity and queuing analyses determine that queuing will be possible over the grade crossing, should be coordinated with the Illinois Commerce Commission's Railroad Safety Section as soon as possible during the design phase. For roundabout intersections near railroads; see Section 36-9.02 (d).

The following factors should be identified and considered during the planning stages:

1. **Clear Storage Distance.** Consider alternative designs that provide a minimum distance of 75 ft (23 m) between the proposed intersection stop bar and a point 6 ft (1.8 m) from the closest rail.

2. **Space for Vehicular Escape.** On the far side of any railroad crossing, consider providing an escape area for vehicles (e.g., shoulder with curb and gutter behind the shoulder, flush medians, flush-corner islands, right-turn acceleration lanes, improved corner radii).

3. **Conflicting Commercial Access.** Left-turn vehicular movements that may inhibit the clearance of queued traffic on the approaches to railroad tracks should be discouraged. If entrances exist on the street approach, consider using design features that would eliminate the problems (e.g., left-turn lane, raised-curb median). Entrances should be placed at a sufficient distance from an at-grade railroad crossing to ensure that the turning path of a passenger vehicle is completed and on tangent at the stop line in advance of the warning devices. No part of an entrance should be placed closer to the track(s) than the warning devices or the stop line extended perpendicular to the roadway centerline, except in the case of entrances used exclusively by railroads to access railroad property.

4. **Pre-Signal Traffic Signals.** Pre-signals should be installed at a grade crossing where the distance between the stop bar and the nearest rail is 56 ft (17.0 m) or less. If the crossing is on a State highway, or if a high percentage of multi-unit vehicles cross the tracks, then pre-signals should be installed where the distance between the stop bar and the nearest rail is 81 ft (24.7 m) or less. If pre-signals are required on the near side of the tracks, a raised-curb median may be necessary adjacent to the tracks to provide for proper placement of signals. When pre-signals are included in the design, all left turn movements must be designed as protected only for all legs (or split-phase on the highway-railroad grade crossing legs in conjunction with protected only left turns on the parallel street). Exceptions to some of these requirements may include the use of 4-quadrant gates at the highway-railroad grade crossing and/or the use of flashing yellow arrows on the street paralleling the tracks. Flashing yellow arrow designs (protected-permitted or permitted left-turn phasing) on the street paralleling the tracks may be considered as long as a red left arrow is displayed towards the crossing during the entire railroad preemption sequence. The pre-signal indications terminate before the associated downstream intersection indications terminate on a cycle-by-cycle basis. This should be simulated in
the corresponding capacity analysis as extended amber and all-red times (12-14 seconds per pre-signal phase terminated), which can lead to significant delay and detrimental level-of-service results. This will affect required storage length calculations for many movements as overall intersection delay will significantly increase. Storage length calculations on the highway-railroad grade crossing leg shall not include the area between the pre-signal and intersection.

5. **Restricted Intersection Capacity.** During periods of frequent railroad preemption of traffic signals, consider the effects of reduced traffic flow, lack of progression on the street paralleling the tracks, and traffic backups. Available computer programs should be used to analyze different capacity and operational scenarios and to recommend any countermeasures. Plans for geometric changes proposed at or near intersections having railroad preemption of traffic signals should be coordinated with the Illinois Commerce Commission's Railroad Safety Section.


7. **Protected Left-Turn Storage.** On the street that parallels the tracks, analyze the storage length needed for left-turns into the side street and across the tracks during preemption of the traffic signals. Without the proper storage length available, this could cause backups into the through lanes.

8. **Right-Turn Lanes.** On the street which runs parallel to the railroad and where an actuated NO RIGHT TURN SIGN is proposed in conjunction with railroad preemption, a right-turn lane should be considered for the right-turn movement across the tracks. The auxiliary lane provides a refuge for right-turning vehicles during railroad preemption and eliminates the problem of traffic temporarily blocking the through lanes.

9. **Side Street Left-Turn Lane Capacity.** On streets that cross railroad tracks, provide sufficient left-turn storage lengths that will avoid the problem of left turns spilling out onto through lanes and blocking the through lanes.

10. **Other.** See the Bureau of Operations *Policies and Procedures Manual* and memorandum for additional information.
36-9 ROUNDABOUTS

36-9.01 General

Roundabouts are a type of circular intersections in which traffic travels counterclockwise (in right-hand traffic countries) around a central island. Specific design and traffic control features define and distinguish roundabouts from traffic circles. These features include yield control of all entering traffic, channelized approaches that deflect traffic flow, and appropriate geometric curvature to ensure that travel speeds on the circulatory roadway are typically less than 30 mph (50 km/hr). Figure 36-9.A illustrates the key components of a roundabout.

ROUNDABOUT ELEMENTS

Figure 36-9.A
When operating within their capacity, roundabouts typically operate with lower vehicle delays than other intersection forms and control types. With no conflicts within a roundabout it is unnecessary for traffic to come to a complete stop. When queues exist at one or more approaches, traffic within the queues usually continues to move, and this is typically more tolerable to drivers than a stopped or standing queue.

Studies have shown that compared to other types of intersections, roundabouts have:

Improved safety:
- Elimination of high conflict angles;
- Lower operating speeds; and
- Fewer vehicular conflict points.

Reduced congestion:
- Efficient during peak hours and other times, and
- Typically less delay.

Reduced pollution and fuel use:
- Fewer stops and hard accelerations, and
- Less time idling.

Reduced costs:
- No signal equipment to install, power, and maintain, although some savings may be offset by the need and cost of illumination;
- Smaller roundabouts may require less right-of-way than traditional intersections; and
- Often less pavement needed.

Complement other common community values:
- Quieter operation, and
- More functional and aesthetically pleasing.

Public acceptance of roundabouts is often one of the biggest challenges facing a jurisdiction that is planning to install its first roundabout. Without the benefit of explanation or first-hand experience and observation, the public is likely to incorrectly associate roundabouts with older, nonconforming traffic circles that they have either experienced or about which they have heard. Equally possible, without adequate education, the public (and agencies alike) will often have a natural hesitation or resistance against changes in their driving behavior and driving environment. In this situation, a proposal to install a roundabout may initially experience a negative public reaction. However, the history of the first few roundabouts installed in the United States also indicated that public attitude toward roundabouts improved significantly after construction. A survey conducted of jurisdictions across the United States reported a significant negative public attitude toward roundabouts prior to construction (68% of the responses were negative or very negative), but a positive attitude after construction (73% of the responses were positive or very positive).
### 36-9.02 Roundabout Selection

#### 36-9.02(a) Comparison of Performance of Alternative Intersection Types

A roundabout is often compared to other intersection types, usually either a stop- or signal-controlled intersection. To simplify the selection process, the following generalized information is offered for a planning-level operational comparison of control modes:

- A roundabout will almost always provide a higher capacity and lower delays than all-way stop-controlled operating with the same traffic volumes.
- A roundabout is unlikely to offer better performance in terms of lower overall delays than two-way stop control (TWSC) at intersections with minor movements (including cross-street entry and major-street left turns) that are not experiencing, nor predicted to experience, operational problems under TWSC.
- A single-lane roundabout may be assumed to operate within its capacity at any intersection that does not exceed the peak-hour volume warrant for signals.
- A roundabout that operates within its capacity will generally produce lower delays than a signalized intersection operates with the same traffic volumes and right-of-way limitations.

Unlike traffic signal control, there are no warrants for roundabouts currently included in the ILMUTCD. Each roundabout must be justified on its own merits as the most appropriate intersection treatment alternative.

#### 36-9.02(b) Selection Consideration Factors

In determining whether to use a roundabout or a more traditional intersection at a site, consider the following:

1. **Safety.** The frequency of crashes at an intersection is related to the number of conflict points at an intersection, as well as the magnitude of conflicting flows at each conflict point. A conflict point is a location where the paths of two vehicles, or a vehicle and a bicycle or pedestrian diverge, merge, or cross each other. For example, the number of vehicle-vehicle conflict points for four-leg intersections drops from 32 to 8 with roundabouts, a 75% decrease. Fewer conflict points mean fewer opportunities for collisions. Also, a roundabout has zero vehicle crossing points.

   The severity of a collision is determined largely by the speed of impact and the angle of impact. The higher the speed and the higher the angle of impact the more severe the collision. Roundabouts reduce in severity or eliminate many severe conflicts that are present in traditional intersections.

2. **Construction Costs.** The costs of installing roundabouts will vary significantly from site to site. A roundabout may cost more or less than a traffic signal, depending on the amount of new pavement area and the extent of other roadway work required. At some existing
unsignalized intersections, a traffic signal can be installed without significant modifications to the pavement area or curbs. In these instances, a roundabout is likely to be more costly to install than a traffic signal, as the roundabout can rarely be constructed without significant pavement and curb modifications. Consideration of maintenance and power should be included with the long-term signal costs.

However, at new sites, and at signalized intersections that require widening at one or more approaches to provide additional turn lanes, a roundabout can be a comparable or less expensive alternative. While roundabouts typically require more pavement area at the intersection, they may require less pavement width on the upstream approaches and downstream exits if multiple turn lanes associated with a signalized intersection can be avoided. The cost savings of reduced approach roadway widths is particularly advantageous at interchange ramp terminals and other intersections adjacent to grade separations where wider roads may result in larger bridge structures.

In most cases, a roundabout is more expensive to construct than the two-way or all-way stop-controlled intersection alternatives.

3. **Movements.** Roundabouts tend to treat all movements at an intersection equally. Each approach is required to yield to circulating traffic, regardless of whether the approach is a local street or major arterial. In other words, all movements are given equal priority. This may result in more delay to the major movements than might otherwise be desired.

This problem is most acute at the intersection of high-volume major streets with low- to medium-volume minor streets (e.g., major arterial streets with minor collectors or local streets). Therefore, the overall street classification system and hierarchy should be considered before selecting a roundabout (or stop-controlled) intersection. This limitation should be specifically considered on emergency response routes in comparison with other intersection types and control. The delays depend on the volume of turning movements and should be analyzed individually for each approach.

4. **Vehicle Delay and Queue Storage.** When operating within their capacity, roundabout intersections typically operate with lower vehicle delays than other intersection forms and control types. With a roundabout, it is unnecessary for traffic to come to a complete stop when no conflicts are present. Where there are queues on one or more approaches, traffic within the queues usually continues to move. This is typically more tolerable to drivers than a stopped or standing queue. The performance of roundabouts during off-peak periods is particularly good in contrast to other intersection forms, typically with very low average delays.

5. **Signal Progression and Access.** It is common practice to coordinate traffic signals on arterial roads to minimize stops and delay to through traffic on the major road. By requiring coordinated platoons to yield to traffic in the circulatory roadway, the introduction of a roundabout into a coordinated signal system may disperse and rearrange platoons of traffic if other conflicting flows are significant, thereby reducing progressive movement. To minimize overall system delay, it may be beneficial to divide the signal system into subsystems separated by the roundabout, assigning each subsystem its own cycle.
The traffic performance of the combination roundabout-signal system should be tested in advance with traffic modeling software. In some cases, total delay, stops, and queues will be reduced by the roundabout. The number of available gaps for midblock unsignalized intersections and driveways may also be reduced by the introduction of roundabouts, although this may be offset by the reduced speeds near roundabouts. In addition, roundabouts can enable safe and quick U-turns that can substitute for more difficult midblock left turns, especially where there is no left turn lane.

6. **Environmental Factors.** Roundabouts may provide environmental benefits if they reduce vehicle delay and the number and duration of stops compared with another alternative. Even where there are heavy volumes, vehicles continue to advance slowly in moving queues rather than coming to a complete stop. This may reduce noise and air quality impacts and fuel consumption significantly by reducing the number of acceleration/deceleration cycles and the time spent idling. In general, if stop or yield control is insufficient, traffic through roundabouts generates less pollution and consumes less fuel than traffic at fixed-time signalized intersections. However, vehicle-actuated signals typically cause less delay, less fuel consumption, and fewer emissions than roundabouts as long as traffic volumes are low. During busy hours, vehicle-actuated signals tend to operate like fixed-time signals, and the percentage of cars that must stop becomes high.

7. **Space Requirements.** Roundabouts usually require more space for the circular roadway and central island than the rectangular space inside traditional intersections. Therefore, roundabouts may have a significant right-of-way impact on the corner properties at the intersection, especially when compared with other forms of unsignalized intersection. The dimensions of a traditional intersection are typically comparable to the envelope formed by the approaching roadways. However, to the extent that a comparable roundabout would outperform a signal in terms of reduced delay and thus shorter queues, it will generally require less queue storage space on the approach legs.

If a signalized intersection requires long and/or multiple turn lanes to provide sufficient capacity or storage, a roundabout with similar capacity may require less space on the approaches. As a result, roundabouts may reduce the need for additional right-of-way on the links between intersections, at the expense of additional right-of-way requirements at the intersections themselves. The right-of-way savings between intersections may make it feasible to accommodate parking, wider sidewalks, planter strips, wider outside lanes, and/or bicycle lanes in order to better accommodate pedestrians and/or bicyclists. Another space-saving strategy is the use of flared approach lanes to provide additional capacity at the intersection while maintaining the benefit of reduced spatial requirements upstream and downstream of an intersection.

At interchange ramp terminals, paired roundabouts have been used to reduce the number of lanes in freeway over- and underpasses. In compact urban areas, there are typically signalized intersections at both ends of overpass bridges, necessitating two additional overpass lanes to provide capacity and storage at the signalized intersections.
8. **Older Drivers.** Roundabouts assist older drivers by reducing the speed at the intersection (i.e., conditions change more slowly allowing for more time to make proper responses), providing less complicated situations and decision-making, judging gaps is easier and mistakes are rarely fatal, providing less demand to accurately judge speeds of traffic, and reducing the required visual scans.

9. **Corner Property Access.** Access to corner properties may be restricted or require driveways to be offset at roundabouts due to the prohibition of driveways within the circulatory roadway.

10. **Operations and Maintenance Costs.** Compared to signalized intersections, a roundabout does not have signal equipment that requires constant power, periodic light bulb and detection maintenance, and regular signal timing updates. Roundabouts, however, can have higher landscape maintenance costs, depending on the degree of landscaping provided on the central island, splitter islands, and perimeter. Illumination costs for roundabouts and signalized intersections are similar.

Drivers sometimes face a confusing situation where they approach a signalized intersection during a power failure, but such failures have minimal temporary effect on roundabouts or any other unsignalized intersections, other than the possible loss of illumination. The service life of a roundabout is significantly longer, approximately 25 years, compared with 10 years for a typical signal.

11. **Traffic Calming.** A series of roundabouts can have secondary traffic calming effect on streets by reducing vehicular speeds. Speed reduction at roundabouts is caused by geometry rather than by traffic control devices or traffic volume. Consequently, speed reduction can be realized at all times of day and on streets of any traffic volume. It is difficult to speed through an appropriately designed roundabout with raised channelization that forces vehicles to physically change direction. In this way, roundabouts can complement other traffic calming measures.

Roundabouts have also been used successfully at the interface between rural and urban areas where speed limits change. In these applications, the traffic calming effects of roundabouts force drivers to slow and reinforce the notion of a significant change in the driving environment.

12. **Aesthetics.** Roundabouts offer the opportunity to provide attractive entries or centerpieces to communities. However, hard objects in the central island directly facing the entries are a safety hazard. The portions of the central island and, to a lesser degree, the splitter islands that are not subject to sight-distance requirements offer opportunities for aesthetic landscaping. Pavement textures can be varied on the aprons as well. They can also be used in tourist or shopping areas to facilitate safe U-turns and to demarcate commercial uses from residential areas. Avoid “attractive nuisances” in the central island, which could attract pedestrians to cross the circulating roadway for closer inspection.

13. **Pedestrian Conflicts.** If a queuing analysis determines frequent interruptions from pedestrians to the traffic flow at the exit, causing traffic to regularly back into the circulatory...
roadway, consideration should be given to a conventionally controlled intersection instead of a roundabout.

36-9.02(c) **Locations**

Consider providing roundabouts at intersections having one of more of the following conditions:

- intersections with high crash rates/high severity rates;
- intersection with complex geometry (e.g., more than four approaches);
- rural intersections with high-speed approaches;
- freeway interchange ramp terminals;
- closely spaced intersections;
- closely spaced offsetting intersections;
- replacement of all-way stops;
- replacement of signalized intersections;
- at intersections with high left-turn volumes;
- replacement of two-way stops with high side-street delay;
- intersections with high U-turn movements;
- transitions from higher-speed to lower-speed areas (traffic calming);
- where aesthetics are important; and
- where accommodating older drivers is an objective.

Roundabouts are not appropriate everywhere. Intersections that may not be good candidates include those with topographic or site constraints that limit the ability to provide appropriate geometry, those with highly unbalanced traffic flows (i.e., very high traffic volumes on the main street and very light traffic on the side street), and isolated intersections in a network of traffic signals.

Roundabouts often require more space in the immediate vicinity of the intersection than a comparable stop-controlled or signalized intersection. This space requirement is dictated by a number of factors, including the size and shape of the roundabout (e.g., circular versus noncircular). However, in the context of a corridor, the additional space needed in the vicinity of a roundabout may be offset by reduced space needed between intersections.

36-9.02(d) **Types**

1. **Single-lane.** A single-lane roundabout can be assumed to operate acceptably if the sum of the entering and circulating volumes for each approach is less than 1000 vph. Maximum entering design speeds based on a theoretical fastest path [fastest path discussed in Section 36-9.04(b)] of 20 mph to 25 mph (30 km/hr to 40 km/hr) are recommended at single-lane roundabouts. Generally, the diameter of the inscribed circle of a single-lane roundabout ranges from 105 ft to 150 ft (32 m to 46 m) with the larger size capable of accommodating a WB-67 (WB-20) design vehicle. The typical maximum service volume is 25,000 vpd.
Single-lane roundabouts are much simpler for bicyclists than multilane roundabouts since they do not require bicyclists to change lanes to make left-turn movements or otherwise select the appropriate lane for their direction of travel. In addition, at single-lane roundabouts, motorists are less likely to cut off bicyclists when exiting the roundabout. These are important factors for selecting a single-lane roundabout over a multi-lane roundabout in the short term, even when long-term traffic predictions suggest that a multilane roundabout may be desirable.

2. **Multilane.** Multilane roundabouts have at least one approach with at least two lanes on the entries or exits. Multilane roundabout design tends to be less forgiving than single-lane roundabout design. Geometry, pavement markings, and signs must be designed together to create a comprehensive system to guide and regulate road users who are traversing roundabouts.

Key considerations for all multilane roundabouts include:

- Lane arrangements to allow drivers to select the appropriate lane on approach and navigate through the roundabout without changing lanes.
- Alignment of vehicles at the entrance line into the correct lane within the circulatory roadway.
- Accommodation of side-by-side vehicles through the roundabout.
- Alignment of the legs to prevent exiting-circulating conflicts.
- Accommodation for all travel modes.

At multilane roundabouts, maximum entering design speeds of 25 mph to 30 mph (40 km/hr to 50 km/hr) are recommended based on a theoretical fastest path [fastest path discussed in Section 36-9.04(b)] assuming vehicles ignore all lane lines. Generally, the inscribed circle diameter of a multilane roundabout ranges from 150 ft to 250 ft (46 m to 76 m). Roundabouts with three-or four-lane entries may require larger diameters of 180 ft to 350 ft (55 m to 100 m) to achieve adequate speed control and alignment. The typical maximum service volume for a two-lane roundabout is 45,000 vpd.

3. **Mini.** With a diameter less than 100 ft, the mini roundabout is smaller than the typical single-lane roundabout. The smaller diameter is made possible by the use of a fully traversable central island to accommodate large vehicles, as opposed to the typical single-lane roundabout where the diameter must be large enough to accommodate a multi-unit within the circulatory roadway (and truck apron if applicable) without it needing to travel over the central island. The small footprint of a mini-roundabout offers flexibility in working within constrained sites. The typical maximum service volume is 15,000 vpd.

### 36-9.03 Public Involvement

Public acceptance of roundabouts is often one of the biggest challenges facing a jurisdiction that is planning to install its first roundabout, thus the use of Context Sensitive Solution principles is
recommended for regions new to roundabout operations. Without the benefit of explanation or first-hand experience and observation, the public (and agencies alike) is likely to incorrectly associate roundabouts with older, non-conforming traffic circles that they have either experienced or heard about.

In such a situation, a proposal to install a roundabout may initially experience a negative public reaction. However, the history of roundabouts installed in the United States also indicates that public attitude toward roundabouts typically improves significantly after construction. Surveys conducted by the Insurance Institute for Highway Safety reported a significant negative public attitude toward roundabouts prior to construction (41% oppose), but a positive attitude after construction (63% positive or very positive).

A variety of techniques have been used successfully in the United States to inform and educate the public about new roundabouts. Some of these include public meetings, websites, informational brochures and videos, and announcements in the newspaper or on television and radio. A public involvement process should be initiated as soon as practical, preferably early in the planning stages of a project while other intersection forms are being considered.

The FHWA has brochures promoting roundabouts available for distribution at public meetings as well as informational videos for viewing. If a roundabout has been constructed in the vicinity, make recommendations for the public to visit the site or discuss with officials within the jurisdiction in which the roundabout is located. Include animated traffic software to show roundabout operations. Other states have created informational videos and brochures of their own which they have used successfully.

36-9.04 Geometric Design

The geometric design of a roundabout requires the balancing of competing design objectives. Designing a roundabout is a process of determining the optimal balance between safety provisions, operational performance, accommodation of the design vehicle, and consideration of non-motorized travel modes.

Roundabout design is an iterative process where a variety of design objectives must be considered and balanced within site-specific constraints. Individual geometric components are not independent of each other; the interaction between the components of the geometry is more important than the individual pieces. Favoring one component of design may negatively affect another. When developing a design, the trade-offs of safety, capacity, cost and so on must be recognized and assessed throughout the design process. A common example of such a trade-off is accommodating large trucks on the roundabout approach and entry while maintaining low design speeds. Increasing the entry width or entry radius to better accommodate a large truck may simultaneously increase the speeds that passenger vehicles enter the roundabout. Therefore, the designer must balance these competing needs and may need to adjust the initial design parameters. To both accommodate the design vehicle and maintain low speeds, additional design modifications could be required, such as offsetting the approach alignment to the left or increasing the inscribed circle diameter of the roundabout.
Once a roundabout location, an initial inscribed diameter, and approach alignment are identified, the design can be more fully developed to include establishing the entry widths, circulatory roadways width, and initial entry and exit geometry. Once the initial designs for the entries and exits on each approach have been laid out, performance checks should be undertaken to evaluate the design versus the principles (including fastest path and design vehicle accommodation) to identify any required design refinements. Based on the performance checks, it may be necessary to perform design iterations to adjust the inscribed circle diameter, approach alignments, roundabout locations, and/or entry and exit design to improve the composition of the design.

36-9.04(a) Design Speed

A well-designed roundabout reduces vehicle speeds upon entry and achieves consistency in the relative speeds between conflicting traffic streams by requiring vehicles to negotiate the roundabout along a curved path. Speed management is often a combination of managing speeds at the roundabout itself and managing speeds on the approaching highways. In urban settings, entering vehicles negotiate a curve sharp enough to slow speeds to about 15 mph to 20 mph (25 km/hr to 30 km/hr); in rural settings, entering vehicles may be held to somewhat higher speeds of 30 mph to 35 mph (50 km/hr to 55 km/hr). Within the roundabout and as vehicles exit, low speeds are maintained by the deflection of traffic around the center island and the relatively tight radius of the roundabout at the exit lanes. Low speeds aid in the smooth movement of vehicles into, around, and out of a roundabout.

Maximum entering design speeds based on a theoretical fastest path of 20 mph to 25 mph (30 km/hr to 40 km/hr) are recommended at single-lane roundabouts. At multilane roundabouts, maximum entering design speeds of 25 mph to 30 mph (40 km/hr to 50 km/hr) are recommended based on a theoretical fastest path assuming vehicles ignore all lane lines.

36-9.04(b) Vehicle Paths

1. Natural Path. The natural path is the path approaching vehicles will tend to naturally take through the roundabout geometry, assuming there is traffic in all approach lanes. The natural path does not have sudden changes in curvature. It has transitions between tangents and curves and between consecutive reversing curves. Secondly, it means that consecutive curves should be of similar radius. If a second curve has a significantly smaller radius than the first curve, the driver may be traveling too fast to negotiate the turn and may not be able to stay within the lane.

With single-lane roundabouts, it is relatively simple to achieve the speed objectives. With a single traffic stream entering and circulating, there is no conflict between traffic in adjacent lanes. The outside curb line of the entry is commonly designed curvilinearly tangential to the outside edge of the circulatory roadway. Likewise, the projection of the inside (left) edge of the entry roadway is commonly curvilinearly tangential to the central island. Figure 36-9.B shows a typical single-lane roundabout entrance design.
A good multilane entry design aligns vehicle into the appropriate lane within the circulatory roadway. Likewise, the design of the exits should also provide appropriate alignment to allow drivers to intuitively maintain the appropriate lane. These alignment considerations often compete with the fastest path speed objectives.

A useful surrogate used by some practitioners for capturing the effects of entry speed, path alignment, and visibility to the left is the entry (phi) angle. Typically, entry angles are between 20 and 40 degrees. The entry (phi) angle is discussed in Section 36-9.4(h).
2. **Fastest Path.** Fastest path is a critical element in the design of roundabouts. The fastest path is the smoothest, flattest path possible for a single vehicle, in the absence of other traffic and ignoring all lane markings. The fastest path through a roundabout is drawn to ensure that the geometry imposes sufficient curvature to achieve a safe design speed. The fastest path is drawn for a vehicle traversing through the entry, around the central island, and out the relevant exit. The fastest path must be drawn for all approaches and all movements, including left-turn movements. Note that the fastest path methodology does not represent expected vehicle speeds, but rather theoretically attainable entry speeds for design purposes.

Figure 36-9.C illustrates and gives a description of the five fastest paths that must be checked for each approach.

To determine the speed of a roundabout, the fastest path allowed by the geometry is drawn. The design speed of the roundabout is determined from the smallest radius along the fastest allowable path. The smallest radius usually occurs on the circulatory roadway as the vehicle curves to the left around the central island. Figure 36-9.D and Figure 36-9.E illustrate the construction of the fastest through paths at a single-lane roundabout and a multilane roundabout, respectively.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Radius</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Entry Path Radius, $R_1$</td>
<td>The minimum radius on the fastest through path prior to the yield line. This is not the same as Entry Radius.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Circulating Path Radius, $R_2$</td>
<td>The minimum radius on the fastest through path around the central island.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exit Path Radius, $R_3$</td>
<td>The minimum radius on the fastest through path into the exit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Left Turn Path Radius, $R_4$</td>
<td>The minimum radius on the path of the conflicting left-turn movement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Right Turn Path Radius, $R_5$</td>
<td>The minimum radius on the fastest path of a right-turning vehicle.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FASTEST PATH RADIi**

*Figure 36-9.C*
OFFSETS AND FASTEST THROUGH PATH FOR A SINGLE-LANE ROUNDABOUT

Figure 36-9.D

OFFSETS AND FASTEST THROUGH PATH FOR A MULTI-LANE ROUNDABOUT

Figure 36-9.E
When drawing the fastest path, use spiral curves or place a tangent of approximately three (3) seconds of travel distance between consecutive curves to account for the time it takes for a driver to rotate the steering wheel. The entry path radius, \( R_1 \), is a measure of the deflection imposed on a vehicle prior to entering the roundabout. The ability of the roundabout to control speed at the entry is a proxy for determining the potential safety of the roundabout and whether drivers are likely to yield to circulating vehicles. The construction of the fastest path should begin at least 165 ft (50 m) prior to the entrance line using the appropriate offsets identified in Figure 36-9.D and Figure 36-9.E. The \( R_1 \) radius should be measured as the smallest best-fit circular curve over a distance of at least 65 ft to 80 ft (20 m to 25 m) near the entrance line. See Figure 36-9.F for additional guidance.

![ENTRY PATH RADIUS](image)

**ENTRY PATH RADIUS**

Figure 36-9.F

3. **Vehicle Path Overlap.** Vehicle path overlap occurs within the circulatory roadway of multilane roundabouts when the natural path through the roundabout of one traffic stream overlaps the path of another. The main consequence of vehicle path overlap is reduced capacity because vehicles will tend not to fully utilize both entry lanes. Also, path overlap can create safety problems since the potential for sideswipe and single-vehicle crashes is increased. The most common type of path overlap is where vehicles in the left lane on entry are cut off by vehicles in the right lane due to inadequate entry path alignment. Path overlap can also occur upon the exit from the roundabout where the exit radii are too small or the overall exit geometry does not adequately align the vehicle paths into the appropriate lanes. See Figure 36-9.G for examples of vehicle overlap. The desired result of the entry design is for vehicles to naturally be aligned into their correct lane within the circulatory roadway, as illustrated in Figure 36-9.H.
PATH OVERLAP AT A MULTILANE ROUNDABOUT

Figure 36-9.G

DESIRABLE VEHICLE PATH ALIGNMENT

Figure 36-9.H
36-9.04(c) **Speed Consistency**

Consistency between the speeds of various movements within the intersection can help to minimize conflicts between adjacent traffic streams. Minimize relative speeds that occur between conflicting traffic streams and between consecutive geometric elements. The speed differential should be no more than approximately 10 mph to 15 mph (15 km/hr to 25 km/hr). These values are typically achieved by providing a low absolute maximum speed for the fastest entering movement.

36-9.04(d) **Design Vehicle**

Passenger buses should be accommodated within the circulatory roadway without tracking over the truck apron, which could jostle bus occupants. Where the design dictates the need to accommodate large design vehicles within their own lane, there are a number of design considerations that come into play. First a larger inscribed circle diameter and entry/exit radii may be required to accommodate the design vehicle and maintain speed control. Another technique for accommodations on the entry is to provide gore striping, i.e., a striped vane island between the entry lanes. This method can help center the vehicles within the lane and allow a cushion for off-tracking by the design vehicle. Also, the use of a mountable truck apron [discussed in Section 36-9.04(i)] around the perimeter of the central island can provide the additional width needed for the off-tracking of the trailer wheels.

36-9.04(e) **Non-motorized Design Users**

This group includes bicyclists, pedestrians, skaters, and strollers. There are two general design issues that are most important for non-motorized users. First, lowering the speeds of motorized vehicles make roundabouts both easier to use and safer for non-motorized users. Therefore, the use of low design speeds is recommended in areas where non-motorized users are common. Second, one-lane roundabouts are generally easier and safer for non-motorized users than multilane roundabouts.

See Sections 36-9.7(a) and 36-9.7(b) for discussion on pedestrian and bicycle accommodations, respectively, and the design of splitter islands to accommodate the same.

36-9.04(f) **Size**

The inscribed circle diameter is the distance across the circle inscribed by the outer edge of the circulatory roadway, i.e., the sum of the central island diameter plus twice the circulatory roadway width. For single-lane roundabouts, the inscribed circle diameter typically should be at least 105 ft (32 m) to accommodate a WB-50 (WB-15) design vehicle and 130 to 150 ft (40 to 46 m) to accommodate a WB-67 (WB-20) design vehicle. Truck aprons are typically needed to keep the inscribed circle diameter reasonable while accommodating the larger design vehicles. Generally, the inscribed circle diameter of a multilane roundabout ranges from 150 ft to 250 ft (46 to 76 m).
36-9.04(g) Alignment of Approaches and Entries

The alignment of an approach affects the amount of deflection (speed control) that is achieved, the ability to accommodate the design vehicle, and the visibility angles to adjacent legs. There are three alternatives to the approach alignment: Offset to the left of center; alignment through the center; and offset to the right of center. Figure 36-9.I shows examples of the three approach alignments.

**ENTRY ALIGNMENT ALTERNATIVES**

1. **Alignment Through Center.** A common starting point in design is to center the roundabout so that the centerline of each leg passes through the center of the inscribed circle. This location typically allows the geometry of a single-lane roundabout to be adequately designed such that vehicles will tend to maintain slow speeds through both the entries and exits. The radial alignment also makes the central island more conspicuous to approaching drivers and minimizes roadway modifications required upstream of the intersection.

2. **Offset Left Alignment.** An offset of the centerline to the left of the roundabout’s center point will typically increase the deflection achieved at the entry to improve speed control and is the preferred alignment of the Department. A disadvantage that may result is the possibility of a tangential exit that may provide less speed control for the downstream pedestrian crossing.

3. **Offset Right Alignment.** Approach alignments that are offset to the right of the roundabout’s center point typically do not achieve satisfactory results, primarily due to a
lack of deflection and lack of speed control that result from this alignment, thus should be avoided. An offset-right alignment brings the approach in at a more tangential angle and reduces the opportunity to provide sufficient entry curvature. Vehicles may enter the roundabout too fast and are less likely to yield to vehicles in the circulating roadway.

4. **Approach Curve.** As long as the offset left alignment is utilized, simple entry curves will provide sufficient deflection to reduce entry speeds. With the offset left alignment, additional approach curves should not be needed. With a radial design or if high entry speeds exist, an S-curve or a series of reverse curves may be needed to slow approaching vehicles. Do not superelevate the approach curves as superelevation would counter the affect curve deflection has for speed control. High entry speed design is discussed in more detail under Section 36-9.4(t), “Rural Roundabouts.”

### 36-9.04(h) Entry Design

1. **Single-lane Entry Design.** The design of the entry curvature should balance the competing objectives of speed control, adequate alignment of the natural paths, and the need for appropriate visibility lines. The entry curb radius should produce a maximum design speed of 20 mph to 25 mph (30 km/hr to 40 km/hr) on the theoretical fastest path. The entry curb radius should not be confused with the entry path curve, \( R_1 \) in Figure 36-9.C) defined by the fastest vehicular travel path through the entry geometry.

   The typical design for the entry curb radius for single lane entry approach alignment is to align the outside (right) curb line of the entry curvilinearly tangential to the outside edge of the circulatory roadway. Likewise, the projection of the inside (left) edge of the entry roadway is commonly curvilinearly tangential to the central island. Figure 36-9.A shows the components discussed. The entry radius at urban single-lane entries typically range from 50 ft to 100 ft (15 m to 30 m). The entry curb radius should produce an appropriate design speed on the fastest vehicular path.

   Entry from high-speed approaches is started upstream by establishing designs which encourage drivers to slow down in advance of the roundabout. A recommended method to achieve speed reduction is through the use of successive reverse curves. An acceptable speed change on successive geometric elements through the approach is approximately 12 mph (20 km/hr). Tangent segments must be place between reverse curves to allow drivers to rotate the steering wheel between the reverse curves. Refer to the fourth point under Section 36-9.04(t) for further direction on high-speed approaches.

   Another important principle in the design of an entry is sight distance and visibility. The angle of visibility to the left must be adequate for entering drivers to comfortably view oncoming traffic from the immediate upstream entry or from the circulatory roadway. Sections 36-9.4(o) and 36-9.4(p) discuss sight distance issues.
2. **Multilane Entry Design.** The entry geometry should provide adequate horizontal curvature to channelize drivers into the circulatory roadway to the right of the central island. The desired result of the entry design is for vehicles to naturally be aligned into their correct lane within the circulatory roadway.

The use of small entry radii [less than 45 ft (14 m)] at multilane roundabout entries may produce low entry speeds, small fastest path radii \( R_1 \), and reduced capacity, but often leads to vehicle path overlap [discussed in Section 36-9(b)] on the entry, since the geometry of the outside (right) lane tends to lead vehicles into the inside (left) circulatory lane; see Figure 36-9.J. Values of \( R_1 \) in the range of 175 ft to 275 ft (53 m to 84 m) are generally preferable. This results in a design speed of 25 mph to 30 mph (40 km/hr to 50 km/hr).

A common technique to promote good path alignment for multilane entry approaches is to use a compound curve or curve followed by a tangent. This design consists of an initial small-radius entry curve [65 ft to 120 ft (20 m to 35 m)] set back at least 20 ft (6.0 m) from the edge of the circulatory roadway. A short section of large-radius [greater than 150 ft (45 m)] or a tangent is fitted between the entry curve and the circulatory roadway to align vehicles into the proper circulatory lane at the entrance line. See Figure 36-9.K for a layout of the entry curve described above.

3. **Entry Angle Phi \( (\Phi) \).** A useful surrogate used by some practitioners for capturing the effects of entry speed, path alignment, and visibility to the left is the entry angle phi \( (\Phi) \). Typically \( \Phi \) entry angles are between 20 and 40 degrees. Refer to the Wisconsin DOT Roundabout Guide for the uses of the phi angle.

### 36-9.04(i) Entry Width

1. **Single-lane Entries.** Entry width at single lane entries is measured from the point where the entrance line intersects the left edge of traveled way to the right edge of the traveled way, along a line perpendicular to the right curb line as shown in Figure 36-9.A. Typical entry widths for single-lane entrances range from 14 ft to 18 ft (4.2 m to 5.5 m). The entry is often widened through a flare from the upstream approach width.

2. **At Multilane Entries.** A typical entry width for a two-lane entry ranges from 24 ft to 30 ft (7.2 m to 9 m) and 36 ft to 45 ft (11 m to 14 m) for a three-lane entry. The entry width should be primarily determined based upon the number of lanes identified in the operational analysis combined with the turning requirements for the design vehicle.
ENTRY VEHICLE PATH OVERLAP
Figure 36-9.J

MINOR APPROACH OFFSET TO INCREASE ENTRY DEFLECTION
Figure 36-9.K
36-9.04(j) **Circulatory Roadway Width**

The required width of the circulatory roadway is determined from the number of entering lanes and the turning requirements of the design vehicle. Except opposite a right-turn only lane, the circulating width should be at least as wide as the maximum entry width and up to 120% of the maximum entry width.

1. **Single-lane Roundabouts.** For single-lane roundabouts, the circulatory roadway width usually remains constant throughout the roundabout. Typically circulatory roadway widths range from 16 ft to 20 ft (4.9 m to 6.1 m). A truck apron will often be needed within the central island to accommodate larger design vehicles, but maintain a relatively narrow circulatory roadway to adequately constrain vehicle speeds. Additional discussion of truck aprons is provided in Section 36-9.04(l). To avoid jostling passengers the circulatory roadway width should be wide enough to accommodate a bus without use of the truck apron.

2. **Multilane Roundabouts.** The circulatory roadway width is usually governed by the design criteria relating to the types of vehicles that may need to be accommodated adjacent to one another through a multilane roundabout. It is acceptable for multi-unit vehicles to encroach upon adjacent lanes. Multilane circulatory roadway lane widths typically range from 14 ft to 16 ft (4.2 m to 4.9 m).

36-9.04(k) **Central Island**

The central island is the raised non-traversable area (except for mini-roundabouts and the truck apron) surrounded by the circulatory roadway. If a truck apron is provided the truck apron is part of the central island. The island is typically landscaped for aesthetic reasons and raised about 3 ft to enhance driver recognition of the roundabout upon approach. A circular central island is preferred because the constant radius circulatory roadway helps promote constant speeds around the central island, but oval or irregular shapes can be used at irregularly shaped intersections such as offsetting intersections.

Roundabouts in rural environments typically need larger central islands than urban roundabouts to enhance their visibility, accommodate larger design vehicles, enable better approach geometry to be designed in the transition from higher speeds, and be more forgiving to errant vehicles.

Avoid "attractive nuisances" in the central island, which could encourage pedestrians to cross the circulating roadway for closer inspection.

36-9.04(l) **Truck Aprons**

A truck apron provides additional paved area to allow the over-tracking of large semi-trailer vehicles upon the central island without compromising the deflection for smaller vehicles. A traversable truck apron is typical for most roundabouts to accommodate large vehicles while minimizing other roundabout dimensions. The truck apron should be designed such that they are traversable to trucks but discourage passenger vehicles from using them by distinguishing the
apron from the circulatory roadway. Distinguishing characteristics include bordering at the edge of the circulating roadway with a raised 2 in. or 3 in. (50 mm to 75 mm) curb and constructing the apron with a different surface or color from the circulating roadway. The recommended maximum cross slope of the truck apron is 1.5% sloping to the roadway or outside to be compatible with the drainage within the inscribed circle. The minimum width for the truck apron is 12 ft (3.6 m). Figure 36-9.L shows a multi-unit truck utilizing a truck apron.

The vertical design of the truck apron should be reviewed to confirm that there is sufficient clearance for low-boy type trailers which may have only 6 in. to 8 in. (150 mm to 200 mm) between a level roadway surface and the bottom of the trailer.

LARGE TRUCK OVERTOPPING THE TRUCK APRON

Figure 36-9.L

36-9.04(m) Exit Design

The exit curb radii are usually larger than the entry curb radii in order to minimize the likelihood of congestion and crashes at the exits. This, however, is balanced by the need to maintain low speeds through the pedestrian crossing on the departure. The exit curb radius is commonly designed to be curvilinearly tangential to the outside edge of the circulatory roadway. Likewise, the projection of the inside (left) edge of the exit roadway is commonly curvilinearly tangential to the central island.
1. **Single-lane Exits.** Single-lane exits in urban environments should be designed to enforce slow exit path speeds to maximize safety for pedestrians crossing the exiting stream. Pedestrian activities should be considered at all exits except where separate pedestrian facilities or other restrictions eliminate the likelihood of pedestrian activity in the foreseeable future.

   For designs using an offset-left approach alignment, the exit design may require much larger radii, ranging from 300 ft to 800 ft (90 m to 240 m) or greater. These radii may provide acceptable speed through the pedestrian crossing area given that the acceleration characteristics of the vehicles will typically result in a practical limit to the speeds that can be achieved on the exit. The fastest-path methodology can be used to verify the exit speed.

2. **Multilane Exits.** Inadequate horizontal design of the exits can result in exit vehicle path overlap. If the exit radius on a multilane exit is too small, traffic on the inside of the circulatory roadway will tend to exit into the outside exit lane on more comfortable turning radius causing vehicle path overlap, similar to that occurring at entries.

### 36-9.04(n) **Splitter Islands**

Purposes of a splitter island are to provide refuge for pedestrians, assist in controlling speeds, guide traffic into the roundabout, physically separate entering and exiting traffic streams, control access, and deter wrong-way movements. Additionally, splitter islands can be used as a place for mounting signs. Splitter islands should be provided on all the legs of a roundabout.

A properly designed splitter island deflects traffic and positions vehicles into a correct alignment to enter the circulatory roadway. This deflection is critical to slowing vehicles before they enter the circulatory roadway. The splitter island should have enough curvature to block a direct path to the central island for approaching vehicles.

When used as a pedestrian refuge, splitter islands shall be a minimum of 6 ft (1.8 m) and preferably 8 ft (2.4 m) from the back of the curb to the back of the curb within the pedestrian refuge area. The total length of the raised island should generally be at least 50 ft (15 m), although 100 ft (30 m) is desirable, to provide sufficient protection for pedestrians and to alert approaching drivers to the geometry of the roundabout. On higher speed roadways, splitter island lengths of 150 ft (45 m) or more are often beneficial; see Figure 36-9.M.

The raised portion of the island controls access to adjacent driveways. Refer to Section 36-9.5(e) for a discussion on access control strategies for the approach and departure of a roundabout.

If the roadway does not have a median at the approach to the splitter island, the approach should have a corrugated median and the nose should be ramped.
36-9.04(o) **Stopping Sight Distance**

Stopping sight distance should be provided at every point within a roundabout and on each entering and exiting approach.

36-9.04(p) **Intersection Sight Distance**

Intersection sight distance is the distance required for a driver without the right-of-way to perceive and react to the presence of conflicting vehicles. Intersection sight distance is achieved through the establishment of sight triangles that allow a driver to see and safely react to potentially conflicting vehicles. The only locations requiring evaluation of intersection sight distance within roundabouts are the entries.

The sight triangle is bound by a length of roadway defining a limit away from the intersection on each of the two conflicting approaches and by a line connecting those two limits. For roundabouts, these legs should be assumed to follow the curvature of the roadway, and thus distances should be measured not as straight lines but as distances along the vehicular path.

Figure 36-9.N presents a diagram showing the method for determining intersection sight distance. The following two subsections discuss each of the approaching sight limits.
1. **Approach Leg of Sight Triangle.** The length of the approach leg of the sight triangle should be limited to 50 ft (15 m). This value is intended to require vehicles to slow down prior to entering the roundabout, which supports the need to slow down and yield at the roundabout entry and allows drivers to focus on the pedestrian crossing prior to entry.

2. **Conflicting Leg of Sight Triangle.** A vehicle approaching an entry to a roundabout faces conflicting vehicles within the circulating roadways and on the immediate upstream entry. In most cases it is best to provide no more than the minimum required intersection sight distance on each approach. Excessive intersection sight distance can lead to higher vehicle speeds that reduce the safety of the intersection for all road users.

Section 6.7.3.2 of *NCHRP Report 672, Roundabouts: An Informational Guide*, defines the limits of the intersection sight triangle and the methodology of calculating the lengths of each leg.
36-9.04(q) **Vertical Considerations**

Components of vertical alignment design for roundabouts include profiles, superelevation, approach grades, and drainage.

1. **Profiles.** Each approach profile should be designed to the point where the approach baseline intersects with the central island. A profile for the central island is then developed that passes through these four points (in the case of a four-legged roundabout). The approach roadway profiles are then readjusted as necessary to meet the central island profile.

Another method has the PGL/profile line following the inside exit path side of the splitter island making it a physical/tangible line to follow for plan prep and construction. From the intersection of the PGL/profile and the outside of the circulatory roadway the PGL/profile line runs across the circulatory roadway to the center of the central island; see Figure 36-9.O.
2. **Superelevation/Cross Slope.** Two primary methods for the superelevation of the circulating roadway are recommended: outward sloping or crowned circulating roadway. Outward sloping is the most common type of vertical design, especially for single-lane roundabouts. Outward sloping means the pavement slopes away from the central island. When the outward sloping cross section is used, the circulating roadway is graded independently of each approach, with the circulatory roadway draining outward with a grade of 1.5% to 2%.

Crowned circulatory roadways consists of approximately 2/3 width sloping toward the central island and 1/3 width sloping outward. Exact location of the crown may vary according to the joint plan and future staging. The cross slopes should range from 1.5% to 2%. Placing the crown 2/3 of the width into the circulatory roadway is more compatible for lowboy trailers by allowing more height to raise the low-boy bed. The intent is to minimize the occurrence of the trailer bottoming-out upon the curb of the truck apron. Figure 36-9.P shows an example of a cross section of a roundabout with a crowned circulatory roadway.

3. **Approach Grades.** Grades of the approach legs should follow guidelines in Section 36-1.06(a).

4. **Drainage.** If the circulating roadway slopes away from the central island, inlets will generally be placed on the outer curb line of the roundabout. For circulating roadways that are crowned, drainage inlets will be required along the central island, since a portion of the circulating roadway drains toward the central island.
36-9.04(r)  **Bus Stop Locations**

Transit considerations at a roundabout are similar to those at a conventional intersection.

1. **Near-side stops.** If an approach has only one lane and capacity is not an issue on that entry, the bus stop could be located at the pedestrian crossing in the lane of traffic. Do not locate the bus stop at the pedestrian crossing for entries with more than one lane because vehicles in the lane next to the bus may not see pedestrians as pedestrians use the crossing. For multilane approaches, a nearside bus stop can be included in the travel lane as long as it is set back at least 50 ft (15 m) from the crosswalk.

2. **Far-side stops.** Bus stops should be located carefully to minimize the probability of vehicle queues spilling back into the circulatory roadway. This typically means that bus stops located on the far side of the intersection need to have pullouts or be further downstream than the splitter island. If a pullout is used, position the pullout beyond the pedestrian crossing to improve visibility of pedestrians to other exiting vehicles. Pedestrian access routes to transit should be designed for safety, comfort, and convenience. If demand is significant (e.g., near a station or terminus), pedestrian crossing capacity should be taken into account.

36-9.04(s)  **Right-turn Bypass Lane**

A right-turn bypass lane allows right-turning traffic to bypass the roundabout, providing additional capacity for the through and left-turn movements at the approach. Bypass lanes are most beneficial when the demand of an approach exceeds its capacity and a significant proportion of the traffic is turning right. In some cases, the use of a right-turn bypass lane can avoid the need to build an additional entry or circulatory lane. To determine if a right-turn bypass lane should be used, the capacity and delay calculations should be performed. A right-turn bypass lane should only be implemented where needed, especially in urban areas with pedestrian and bicycle activities. There are two options for right-turn bypass lanes: Figure 36-9.Q gives examples of both a full and partial bypass lane.

1. **Full bypass.** A full bypass lane carries the bypass lane parallel to the adjacent exit roadway, and then merges it into the main exit lane.

2. **Partial bypass.** A partial bypass lane, with or without a vane, provides a yield-controlled entrance onto the adjacent exit roadway. This option is generally better for bicyclists and pedestrians and is recommended as the preferred option in urban areas where pedestrians and bicyclists are prevalent. The partial bypass lane should direct the vehicle to the adjacent leg’s splitter island to minimize the likelihood of the driver using the bypass lane as a though lane.
RIGHT TURN BYPASS LANES
(Top view, full bypass. Bottom view, partial bypass)

Figure 36-9.Q
36-9.04(t) Rural Roundabouts

Roundabouts located on rural roads often have special design considerations because approach speeds are higher than for urban or local streets, and drivers are less likely to expect to encounter speed interruptions. The primary safety concern in rural locations is to make drivers aware of the roundabout with ample distance to comfortably decelerate to the appropriate speed. The design of a roundabout in a high-speed environment typically employs all the techniques of a roundabout in a lower-speed environment, with greater emphasis on the items presented below.

1. **Visibility.** The potential for single-vehicle crashes can be minimized with attention to proper visibility of the roundabout and its approaches. Where possible, the geometric alignment of approach roadways should be constructed to maximize the visibility of the central island and the shape of the roundabout. Where adequate visibility cannot be provided solely through geometric alignment, additional treatments (signing, pavement markings, advanced warning beacons, etc.) should be considered. Note that many of these treatments are similar to those that would be applied to rural stop-controlled or signalized intersections.

2. **Curbing.** Narrow shoulder widths and curbs on the outside edges of pavement generally give drivers a sense they are entering a more controlled setting, causing them to naturally slow down. Thus, when installing a roundabout on an open rural highway, curbs should be provided at the roundabout and on the approaches, and consideration should be given to reducing shoulder widths. Extend the curbing from the approach for at least the length of the required deceleration to the roundabout.

3. **Splitter Islands.** Splitter islands should generally be extended upstream of the entrance line to the point at which entering drivers are expected to begin decelerating comfortably. A minimum of 200 ft (60 m) is recommended for high-speed approaches.

4. **Approach Curves.** The radius of an approach curve (and subsequent vehicular speeds) has a direct impact on the frequency of crashes at roundabouts. A study has shown that decreasing the radius of an approach curve generally decreases the approaching rear-end vehicle crash rate and the entering-circulating and exiting-circulating vehicle crash rates. On the other hand, decreasing the radius of an approach curve may increase the single vehicle crash rate on the curve. This may encourage drivers to cut across lanes and increase sideswipe crashes on the approach.

One method to achieve speed reduction in order to reduce crashes at the roundabout is the use of successive reverse curves on the approaches; see Figure 36-9.R. By limiting the reduction in the design speed on successive reverse curves to approximately 12 mph (20 km/hr), the crash rate was reduced. Provide tangents between successive reverse curves of approximately 3 seconds of travel distance to allow a change in rotation of the steering wheel and do not superelevate the curves. A report recommended the approach speed be limited to no more than 35 mph (60 km/hr) immediately prior to the entry curves to minimize high-speed rear-end crashes and entering-circulating vehicle crashes.
**USE OF SUCCESSIVE CURVES ON HIGH-SPEED APPROACHES**

Figure 36.9.R

36-9.04(u) **Mini-roundabouts**

A mini-roundabout is characterized by a smaller diameter and traversable island. Mini-roundabouts are best suited to environments where speeds are already low and environmental constraints would preclude the use of a larger roundabout with a raised central island.

Mini-roundabouts operate in the same manner as larger roundabouts, with yield control on all entries and counterclockwise circulation around a central island. Due to the small footprint, large vehicles are typically required to travel over the fully traversable central island, but buses should be accommodated within the circulatory roadway to avoid jostling passengers by running over a traversable central island.

36-9.04(v) **Staging Single-Lane versus Multilane Roundabout**

When projected traffic volumes indicate that a multilane roundabout is required for future year conditions, engineers should evaluate the duration of time that a single-lane roundabout would operate acceptably before requiring additional lanes. Where a single lane roundabout should be sufficient for much of its design life, engineers should evaluate whether it is best to first construct a single-lane roundabout until traffic volumes dictate the need for expansion to a multilane roundabout. One reason to stage the construction of a multilane roundabout is that future traffic predictions may never materialize due to the significant number of assumptions that must be made when developing volume estimates for a 20 or 30-year design horizon. Also, non-motorized users are better accommodated on single-lane roundabouts.

Single lane roundabouts are generally simpler for motorists to learn and are more easily accepted in new locations. This, combined with fewer vehicle conflicts, should result in a better overall crash experience and allow for a smooth transition into the ultimate multilane build-out of the intersection.
When considering an interim single-lane roundabout, the engineer should evaluate the right-of-way and geometric needs for both the single-lane and multilane configurations.

Two methods to expand from a single-lane to a double lane roundabout:

1. **Expansion to the outside.** When using this option, care should be taken to provide adequate geometric features, including entry and splitter island design, to ensure that speed reduction and adequate natural paths can be provided at build-out. This configuration has the potential to be less of a disruption to vehicular traffic during the expansion since the majority of the improvements are on the outside of the roadway.

2. **Expansion to the inside.** Expansion to the inside involves adding any necessary lanes for the ultimate configuration to the inside of the interim roundabout configuration, with the outer curbs and inscribed circle diameter remaining the same in both interim and ultimate configurations. This allows the engineer to set the outer limits of the intersection during the initial construction and limits the future construction impacts to surrounding properties during widening, as sidewalks, drainage features, and outer curb lines will not typically require adjustments.

### 36-9.05 Operational Performance

The operational performance of roundabouts is relatively simple, although the techniques used to model performance can be quite complex. A few features are common to the modeling techniques employed by all analysis tools:

- Drivers must yield the right-of-way to circulating vehicles and accept gaps in circulating traffic stream. Therefore, the operational performance of a roundabout is directly influenced by traffic patterns and gap acceptance.

- As with other types of intersections, the operational performance of a roundabout is directly influenced by its geometry.

Influences to roundabout operations follow:

1. **Gap Acceptance.** The operation of vehicular traffic at a roundabout is determined by gap acceptance: Entering vehicles look for and accept gaps in circulating traffic. The low speed of a roundabout facilitates these gap acceptance practices. Furthermore, the operational efficiency (capacity) of roundabouts is greater at lower circulating speeds because of the following two phenomena.

   - The faster the circulating traffic, the larger the gaps that entering traffic will comfortably accept. This translates to fewer acceptable gaps and therefore more instances of entering vehicles stopping at the yield line.

   - Entering traffic, which is first stopped at the yield line, requires even larger gaps in the circulating traffic in order to accelerate and merge with the circulating traffic. The faster the circulating traffic, the larger this gap must be. This translates into fewer acceptable gaps and therefore longer delays for entering traffic.
2. **Traffic Flow and Driver Behavior.** The capacity of a roundabout decreases as the conflicting flow increases. In general, the primary conflicting flow is the circulating flow that passes directly in front of the subject entry. Exiting flow may also affect a driver’s decision on when to enter the roundabout. This phenomenon is similar to the effect of the right-tuning stream approaching from the left side of a two-way stop-controlled intersection. Another behavioral affect occurs when both the entering and conflicting flow volumes are high. Limited priority (where circulating traffic adjusts its headway to allow entering vehicles to enter) or priority reversal (where entering traffic forces circulating traffic to yield) may occur.

3. **Geometry.** Geometry plays a significant role in the operational performance of a roundabout in a number of key ways:
   - It affects the speed of vehicles through the intersection, thus influencing their travel time by virtue of geometry alone (geometric delay).
   - It dictates the number of lanes over which entering and circulating vehicles travel. The width of the approach roadway and entry determine the number of vehicle streams that may form side-by-side at the yield line and govern the rate at which vehicles may enter the circulating roadway.
   - It can affect the degree to which flow in a given lane is facilitated or constrained. For example, the angle at which a vehicle enters affects the speed of that vehicle, with entries that are more perpendicular requiring lower speeds and thus longer headway. Likewise, the geometry of multilane entries may influence the degree to which drivers are comfortable entering next to one another.
   - It may affect the driver’s perception of how to navigate the roundabout and their corresponding lane choice approaching the entry. Improper lane alignment can increase friction between adjacent lanes and thus reduce capacity. Imbalanced lane flows on an entry can increase the delay and queuing on an entry despite the entry operating below its theoretical capacity.

Lane changes within circulating lanes should not be required other than when a lane is added within the circulatory roadway. A lane added within the circulating roadway does not create any additional conflicts.

### 36-9.05(a) Entering, Circulating, and Exiting Volumes

The analytic methods in the *Highway Capacity Manual* allow the assessment of the operational performance of an existing or planned one-lane or two-lane roundabout when given traffic demand levels.

1. **Determining Roundabout Flow Rates.** The circulating flow rate opposing a given entry is defined as the flow conflicting with the entry flow of that leg. See Exhibit 21-11 of the 2010 *Highway Capacity Manual* (HCM). For example, the movements that contribute to the northbound circulating flow rate (shown as $V_{c,NB}$ in Exhibit 21-11 of the HCM) are the movements that flow in front of the northbound entry, which are the eastbound through, eastbound left-turn, eastbound U-turn, southbound Left-turn, southbound U-turn, and westbound U-turn movements.
CONVERSION OF TURNING-MOVEMENT VOLUMES TO ROUNDABOUT VOLUMES

Figure 36-9.S

(1 of 2)
CONVERSION OF TURNING-MOVEMENT VOLUMES TO ROUNDABOUT VOLUMES

Figure 36-9.S

(2 of 2)
2. **Conversion of Turning-Movement Volumes to Roundabout Volumes.** See Figure 36-9.S. After determining the demand flow rate, by dividing by the peak-hour factor, and then adjusting for heavy vehicles to determine the passenger car equivalents, one can determine the entry flow rates, circulating flow rates, and the exiting flow rates.

- Entry flow rates are calculated by summing up the movement flow rates that enter the roundabout. For single-lane roundabouts, all approach volumes are summed together. Additional lane-use calculations are required for multilane roundabouts.

- Circulating flow rates are the sum of all volumes that are expected to conflict with entering vehicles on the subject approach.

-Exiting flow rates are calculated for each leg by summing all flow that will be exiting the roundabout on a particular leg.

The exiting flow rate for a given leg is used primarily in the calculation of conflicting flow for right-turn bypass lanes and in determining queuing at exit–side crosswalks. For example the movements contributing to the southbound exiting flow rate (shown as $v_{ex,SB}$ in Exhibit 21-12 of the HCM) are the eastbound right-turn, southbound through, westbound left-turn, and northbound U-turn movements.

### 36-9.05(b) **Capacity**

The maximum flow rate that can be accommodated at a roundabout entry depends on two factors: The circulating flow rate in the roundabout that conflicts with the entry flow, and the geometric elements of the roundabout. The larger gaps in the circulating flow are more useful to the entering drivers and more than one vehicle may enter each gap. As the circulating flow increases, the size of the gaps in the circulating flow decreases, thus the rate at which vehicles can enter also decreases.

The geometric elements of the roundabout also affect the rate of entry flow. The most important geometric elements are the width and number of lanes at entry, and the circulatory roadway width within the roundabout. Two entry lanes permit nearly twice the rate of entry flow compared to one lane. A wider circulatory roadway allows vehicles to travel side-by-side or staggered, which creates a tighter group of vehicles, thereby providing longer gaps.

1. **Single-lane Roundabout Entry Capacity.** A single-lane roundabout can be expected to handle 25,000 vpd and peak-hour flows between 2000 vph and 2500 vph. This rate exceeds 1900 vph, which is the typical single-lane capacity of a signalized intersection. This higher rate is achievable for several reasons. First, this is the total of all the approaches of the roundabout, not a single approach. Second, because of multiple approaches and right turns, much of the traffic does not conflict and may enter the intersection nearly simultaneously.

2. **Single-lane Exit Capacity.** It is difficult to achieve an exit flow on a single lane of more than 1400 vph, even under good operating conditions for vehicles (i.e., tangential
alignment, and no pedestrians or bicyclists). Under normal urban conditions, the exit lane capacity should be in the range of 1200 vph to 1300 vph. Therefore, exit flows exceeding 1200 vph may indicate a lower LOS or the need for a multilane exit.

3. **Multilane Roundabout Capacity.** For planning purposes, multilane roundabouts (two-lane entries) can be expected to handle ADT’s between 25,000 vpd and 45,000 vpd and peak-hour flows between 2500 vph and 4500 vph.

4. **Pedestrian Effects on Entry and Exit Capacity.** Pedestrians crossing at a marked crosswalk that have priority over entering motor vehicles can have a significant effect on the entry capacity. In such cases, if the pedestrian crossing volume and circulating volume are known, multiply the vehicular capacity by a factor, $f_{ped}$, according to the relationship shown in Exhibit 21-18 or Exhibit 21-20 of the 2010 *Highway Capacity Manual* (HCM) for single-lane and double-lane roundabouts, respectively. Note that the effects of conflicting pedestrians on the approach capacity decrease as conflicting vehicular volumes increase, as entering vehicles become more likely to have to stop regardless of whether pedestrians are present. Consult the (HCM) for additional guidance on the capacity of pedestrian crossings if the capacity of the crosswalk itself is an issue. A similar concern may occur at the roundabout exit where pedestrians cross.

36-9.05(c) **Capacity Software**

IDOT requires the current version of Signalized (and unsignalized) Intersection Design and Research Aid (SIDRA) for capacity analyses of roundabouts. SIDRA closely follows the methods used in the *Highway Capacity Manual* (HCM), which IDOT requires for computing highway capacity analyses. SIDRA software also includes alternative tools for applications beyond the ability of the HCM.

36-9.05(d) **Traffic Control**

Vehicles entering the roundabout must yield to the traffic within the circle. A YIELD sign is required at the entry along with the appropriate pavement markings. There is no traffic control within the circular roadway.

36-9.05(e) **Access Control**

Roundabouts can be used at key public and private intersections to facilitate major movements and enhance access management. Major commercial driveways may be allowed as legs of the roundabout, however, installation of a roundabout strictly for access to private development is discouraged. Minor public and private access points between roundabouts can be accommodated by partially or fully restricted two-way stop-controlled intersections, with the roundabouts providing U-turn opportunities.

Most of the principles used for access management at conventional intersections can also be applied at roundabouts. Property access within the vicinity of an individual roundabout
intersection must be carefully evaluated. If an access, such as a driveway, is necessary within an intersection a roundabout should be discouraged at the location. As a corollary to this, do not include driveways within the circulating area of a roundabout. Driveways introduce conflicts into the circulating roadway, including acceleration and deceleration. Traditional driveways do not discourage wrong way movements as a splitter island does.

Access points should be no closer to the roundabout intersection than the splitter islands. On a larger consideration, access points near roundabouts are governed by a number of factors:

1. **Capacity of the Minor Movements at the Access Point.** While roundabouts may allow for fewer lanes between intersections, the traffic pattern that emerges from roundabouts can have a significant impact on existing midblock access. Unlike the platooned flow typically downstream of a signalized intersection, traffic passing in front of an access point downstream of a roundabout should be more randomly distributed. As a result, an access point downstream of a roundabout may have less capacity and higher delay than one downstream of a traffic signal.

2. **Need to Provide Left-turn Storage on the Major Street to Serve the Access Point.** For all but low-volume driveways, it is desirable to provide separate left-turn storage for access points downstream of a roundabout to minimize the likelihood that a left-turning vehicle could block the major street traffic. If an access point is necessary and left turn access is permitted, it should be located far enough from the splitter island of the roundabout that the required deceleration and storage lengths can be provided.

3. **Sight distance needs.** A driver at the access point should have proper intersection sight distance. Vehicles within the roundabout should be visible when approaching or departing the roundabout.

### 36-9.06 Safety

The use of roundabouts is a proven safety strategy for improving intersection safety by eliminating or altering conflict types, reducing crash severity, and causing drivers to reduce speeds as they proceed into and through the intersections. This is true for urban, suburban, and rural environments in replacing two-way stop and signal controls. While overall crash frequencies have been reduced, the crash reductions are most pronounced for motor vehicles, less pronounced for pedestrians, and equivocal for bicyclists and motorcyclists depending on the study and bicycle treatments.

The reasons for the increased safety level at roundabouts are:

- Roundabouts have fewer vehicular conflict points in comparison to conventional intersections and the potential for the most severe types of conflicts, such as right angle and left turn head-on crashes, is greatly reduced with roundabout use.
Lower absolute speeds generally associated with roundabouts decrease the braking distance required to avoid potential conflicts. Low vehicle speeds help reduce crash severity, making fatalities and serious injuries much less common at roundabouts.

Since most users travel at similar speeds through roundabouts, crash severity can be reduced compared to some traditionally controlled intersections.

Pedestrians need only cross one direction of traffic at a time at each approach as they traverse roundabouts (i.e., crossing in two stages), as compared with many traditional intersections. Pedestrian-vehicle conflict points are reduced at roundabouts; from the pedestrian perspective, conflicting vehicles come from fewer directions.

NCHRP Report 572, *Roundabouts in the United States* and NCHRP Report 672, *Roundabouts: An Informational Guide* include intersection-level crash prediction models to evaluate the safety performance of an existing roundabout relative to its peers, and in the estimation of the expected safety changes, if a roundabout is contemplated for constructions at an existing conventional intersection.

Although the frequency of crashes is most directly tied to volume, the severity is most directly tied to speed. Therefore, careful attention to the design speed of a roundabout is fundamental to attaining good safety performance.

### 36-9.07 Pedestrian and Bicycle Accommodations

As with the motorized design vehicle, the design criteria for non-motorized potential roundabouts users (bicyclists, pedestrians, wheelchairs, etc.) shall be considered when developing many of the geometric components of a roundabout design. There are two general design issues that are most important for non-motorized users. First, lower motorized vehicle speeds make roundabouts both easier to use and safer for non-motorized users. Second, one-lane roundabouts are generally easier and safer for non-motorized users than multilane roundabouts. When non-motorized users are a significant consideration, do not design a multilane roundabout when a single lane roundabout should be sufficient.

#### 36-9.07(a) Pedestrians

Pedestrian activities shall be considered at all roundabouts except where separate pedestrian facilities or other restrictions eliminate the likelihood of pedestrian activity in the foreseeable future.

Pedestrians desire crossing locations as close to the roundabout as possible to minimize out-of-direction travel. The further the crossing is from the roundabout, the more likely pedestrians will choose a shorter route that may put them in greater danger. In general, at a minimum, locate the pedestrian crossing one car length or approximately 20 ft (6.0 m) upstream from the yield point and place the crossing at full vehicle-length-increments from the yield line for crossings further from the yield line.
For pedestrian safety the crossing should not be located too far back from the yield line so that entering vehicle speeds are not sufficiently reduced or exiting vehicles are accelerating. It may be appropriate to design the pedestrian crossing at two or three car lengths from the yield point at some multilane entries. At single-lane roundabouts in urban environments, exits should be designed to enforce low exit path speeds to maximize safety for pedestrians crossing the exiting stream.

At roundabouts with multilane pedestrian street crossings, a pedestrian activated signal should be provided for each multilane segment of each pedestrian street crossing. A pedestrian signal found to be effective in increasing yielding rates is the rectangular rapid flashing beacon. Pedestrian hybrid beacons (commonly referred to as HAWK signals) are not recommended for pedestrian signals at roundabouts.

Regardless of the type of pedestrian signal, the operation for a pedestrian crossing a roundabout approach should be done in two stages. A single-stage pedestrian signal can result in excessive amount of delay to vehicular traffic. At two-stage signalized pedestrian crossings, there are two separate pedestrian walk intervals, one for crossing the entry roadway and one for crossing the exit roadway.

Roundabouts with single lane approach and exit legs are not required to provide pedestrian activated signals. If a roundabout consists of multilane and single lane pedestrian crossings consider including pedestrian activated signals at the single lane pedestrian street crossings for consistency.

The raised splitter island width shall be a minimum of 6 ft (1.8 m) wide (from the back-of-curb to the back-of-curb) at the crosswalk to adequately provide shelter for users and to provide the minimum width for the use of detectable warnings within the splitter island.

Roundabout operations at the exit can be affected by pedestrian use of the crosswalk. A queuing analysis at the exit crosswalk may determine that a crosswalk location of more than one vehicle length from the circulatory roadway may be desirable to reduce the likelihood of queuing into the circulatory roadway due to pedestrians crossing. Also, it may be easier for pedestrians to visually distinguish exiting vehicles from circulating vehicles at crosswalks located further from the roundabout. If a queuing analysis determines frequent interruptions from pedestrians to the traffic flow at the exit, causing traffic to regularly back into the circulatory roadway, consideration should be given to a conventionally controlled intersection instead of a roundabout.

The draft Public Rights-of-Way Accessibility Guidelines (PROWAG) from the United States Access Board include a requirement to provide a detectable edge treatment between sidewalks and roundabouts wherever pedestrian crossings are not intended, such as adjacent to the perimeter of the circulatory roadway, along the approaches, or along the exit/entrance radii.

Landscape strips are an effective method to provide a detectable edge treatment. Landscape strips provide many benefits, including increased comfort for pedestrians, room for street furniture and snow storage, and a buffer to allow for the overhang of large vehicles as they navigate the roundabout. Also, the setback discourages pedestrians from crossing to the central island or
cutting across the circulatory roadway of the roundabout. The setback helps guide pedestrians with vision impairment to the designated crosswalk.

If the sidewalk must be flush with the back of the curb, provide a detectable edge treatment along the street side of the sidewalk. If chains, fences, or railings are used for edge treatment, the bottom of the edge treatments shall be no higher than 15 in. (380 mm) above the sidewalk. Detectable warning surfaces, such as truncated domes, shall not be used for edge treatment because detectable warning surfaces indicate the flush transition between the sidewalk and the roadway. In addition to chains, fences, or railings, low shrubs or grass may be used for edge treatments.

36-9.07(b) Bicycles

Bicyclists’ decisions at roundabouts depend on how the bicyclist chooses to travel through the intersection. If traveling as a vehicle, as is often the case for experienced cyclists and cyclists in lower volume and low speed environments, the decision process mirrors that of motorized vehicles. Effective designs that constrain motorized vehicles to speeds more compatible with bicycle speed, around 15 mph to 20 mph (20 km/hr to 30 km/hr), are much safer for bicyclists. If traveling as a pedestrian, as is often the case for less experienced cyclists and cyclists in higher traffic volume environments, the decision process mirrors that of pedestrians.

Although the best design provides bicyclists the choice of proceeding through the roundabout as either a vehicle or as a pedestrian, in general, bicyclists are better served by being treated by roundabout designers as vehicles. When entering traffic volumes are projected to be large (i.e., greater than 12,000 ADT), look at other options such as shared use-paths, which provide a physical separation from vehicles around the periphery of the roundabout.

If bicycle lanes are provided on the roadway approaches provide a ramp from the roadway to a shared-use path prior to the intersection to allow a bicyclist to exit the roadway and proceed around the intersection safely through the use of cross walks if the bicyclist is uncomfortable mixing with vehicles. Consider bicycle ramps and a shared-use path around the circulatory roadway for bicycle accommodations even if no sidewalks or shared-use paths are proposed approaching the roundabout. Continue the shared-use path around the circulatory roadway, but separate from the circulatory roadway, where bicycle use is expected. Do not provide bike lanes within the circulatory roadway.

For bicycle design considerations through a roundabout; see Section 17-2.04.

36-9.08 Parking

Parking within the circulatory roadway is prohibited. Parking on entries and exits to the roundabout should be set back far enough so as not to hinder roundabout operations or to impair visibility of pedestrians.
36-9.09 Illumination

For a roundabout to operate satisfactorily, a driver must be able to enter the roundabout, move through the circulating traffic, and separate from the circulatory stream in a safe and efficient manner. Pedestrians must also be able to safely use the crosswalks. To accomplish this, a driver must be able to perceive the general layout and operation of the intersection in time to make the appropriate maneuvers at all times of the day. Adequate lighting shall therefore be provided at all roundabouts including those in rural locations.

Lighting of roundabouts provides:

1. visibility from a distance for users approaching the roundabout;

2. visibility of the key conflict areas to improve users’ perception of the layout and visibility of other users within the roundabout;

3. additional visibility for signing and pavement markings; and

4. visibility of pedestrians at and within the crosswalks.

The effectiveness of auto headlights is limited in a roundabout due to the constrained curve radius, making the roadway lighting system very important for nighttime visibility of obstructions and hazards. Approach lighting should provide good perception of the presence of the roundabout.

See Section 56-2.08 for more guidance on lighting for roundabouts.

36-9.10 Signing and Delineation

Pavement marking and signs are integral to the design of roundabouts, especially multilane roundabouts. The ILMUTCD, the latest version of FHWA’s Standard Highway Signs, and any applicable state and local standards govern the design and placement of traffic control devices, including signs, pavement markings and signals. Consult the Bureau of Operations or Bureau of Traffic within the respective District of the roundabout location for specific standards for delineating and signing roundabouts.

Entry lanes should be well referenced, especially for multilane roundabouts, which should have cars in their proper lane at the approach so lane changing is not required through circulating lanes. Signs should be located where they have the maximum visibility for road users, but a minimal likelihood of even momentarily obscuring pedestrians and bicyclists.

A YIELD sign is required at the entry along with the appropriate pavement markings. There is no traffic control within the circular roadway.
36-10 ALTERNATIVE INTERSECTIONS

Some nontraditional intersection designs may offer substantial advantages, under certain conditions, compared to conventional at-grade intersections or grade-separated interchanges. This section provides background information and design guidance for RCUT, MUT, DLT and CGT intersections.

36-10.01 Restricted Crossing U-turn Intersections

Restricted Crossing U-Turn intersections (RCUTs) are also referred to as *superstreets* (where signalized locations are in series) or *J-turn* intersections (if unsignalized). These intersections may be an effective design option for addressing operational and/or safety concerns along urban multi-lane arterials and high-speed multi-lane highways (expressways). At an RCUT all traffic enters the primary route via right-turns. The left-turn and through traffic approaching on the side (or minor) road is redirected to a U-turn maneuver at a downstream median opening (crossover), and drivers then continue along the mainline or turn back (right) onto the side road. Figure 36-10.A shows a schematic of the most common RCUT type. Left turn lanes allow for direct left-in access, while movements from the side road are right-in, right-out. Crossovers for U-turns are typically located 500 ft to 2,000 ft (150 m to 600 m) downstream of the main intersection, with locations dependent on mainline speed and geometric factors. If present at signalized RCUTs, pedestrians would be directed to cross the primary route in a diagonal fashion, from one corner to the opposite corner. See Section 36-10.1(f) for guidance on pedestrian accommodation.

In some cases, left turns off of the primary route are also eliminated, with that traffic redirected beyond the main intersection to the crossover for U-turns as shown schematically in Figure 36-10.B. This design could be appropriate based on a history of mainline left-turn crashes, very low mainline left-turn demand, or constrained intersection sight distance in rolling terrain. In either design type, signalization at the main intersection could be considered for the allowed turning vehicles or for pedestrians; signalization of the U-turn movements may also be considered when an ILMUTCD signal warrant is met. Other unique RCUT designs are illustrated in Figure 36-10.C and Figure 36-10.D.
RCUT SCHEMATIC WITH MAINLINE DIRECT LEFT TURNS

Figure 36-10.A

RCUT SCHEMATIC WITHOUT MAINLINE DIRECT LEFT TURNS

Figure 36-10.B
THREE LEGGED RCUT SCHEMATIC

Figure 36-10.C

OFFSET RCUT SCHEMATIC

Figure 36-10.D
RCUTs improve safety performance by causing drivers to split their driving task into a series of low-complexity decisions and allowing them to find adequate gaps more easily. Based on the changes in movement types, crashes that do occur at RCUTs tend to be less severe than those that occur at traditional full-access intersections, whether signalized or 2-way stop-controlled. RCUTs may be used along urban and suburban roadways with medians as narrow as 18 ft (5.5 m), and on high-speed rural open-open median facilities. Signalized RCUT corridors can be developed by converting multiple intersections along high-ADT primary routes.

An overall layout showing common features of an RCUT is shown in Figure 36-10.E. A more detailed example of a rural RCUT intersection and adjacent median crossover is provided in Figure 36-10.F. The primary route may have either four or six lanes, and side roads may have two or four lanes. The most common situation will be a four-lane mainline and two-lane minor road. Signal warrants should always be checked for the redirected traffic patterns created by the main RCUT intersections and U-turn crossovers. Note that meeting a warrant does not mean that signals will be required; signalization is an operational and safety decision. When provided, two-phase signals are the norm at both the main intersection and the U-turn location(s). If traffic volumes are expected to grow substantially after initial opening, an RCUT design can provide for additional turn lanes and/or signalization to be added later through phased implementation.

RCUT intersections and corridors may be especially suitable where:

- There is heavy through and/or heavy left-turn volumes on primary route approaches;
- The ratio of the minor road approach volume to the total intersection approach volume is less than 0.20;
- The primary route left-turning volume per lane is greater than 80 percent of the minor road traffic per lane moving concurrently during a signal phase;
- During peaks the intersection is heavily-congested with signal phase failures (LOS F) occurring for through and/or left-turn traffic on the primary route;
- Corridor access management is desirable;
- The history of intersection crashes, both overall and for turning and angle crashes, shows rates above the statewide average for peer group locations; or
- Sight distance constraints for left turns onto or off of the primary route seem to have led to crashes or documented near-misses.

RCUTs may be less effective where there are heavy through and left-turn volumes from the side road approaches. Concerns may include extra travel time incurred by side road drivers and/or congestion related to the U-turn movements. Both an operational analysis and a safety performance assessment are typically necessary. Refer to Chapters 49 or 50 for operational criteria associated with arterial and freeway projects.

36-10.01(a) General Design Considerations

The spacing from the main intersection to the U-turn crossover, the “offset distance”, is influenced by several factors. For rural unsignalized locations a very conservative design would consider the acceleration, weaving, and deceleration maneuvers using the combined peak-hour through and side road volumes. Offset distance would be the sum of acceleration distance (moving into
the mainline assuming a merge), weaving length (for moves from the right lane to the left lane along the expressway), and deceleration (left-turn lane) length. If the U-turn is unsignalized, similar calculations could be applied to the return path. This procedure for setting offset distance is overly conservative in practice. The criteria for the weaving length is not fully applicable, and weaving distances can usually be ignored. The designer may consider providing an acceleration lane in accordance with Figure 36-2.L for slow moving (heavy truck) traffic entering the mainline.

For a two-lane minor road and four-lane mainline, a 500 ft to 800 ft (150 m to 240 m) offset distance will typically suffice in urban/suburban areas. A 700 ft to 2,000 ft (210 m to 600 m) offset distance is often appropriate for rural high-speed locations. Consider the need for guide signs and the presence of trucks in setting design offset distances. Values at the higher end of these ranges involve more out-of-direction travel but may decrease the probability of queue spillback and also provide more time and space for drivers to read signs and change lanes. Closer spacing reduces driving distances and travel times and is typically favored by drivers. The designer should consider these factors as well as topography, sight lines, and access points when setting offset distances.

The main intersection must physically eliminate the possibility of side road through and left-turn movements by inserting raised curb and wide grass areas in conjunction with left turn channelization. However, coordination with state and local emergency services may affect design details. The crossover intersection must clearly guide turning movements and allow for the design vehicle(s) to complete U-turns within the pavement. Accommodating these movements typically require widening pavement for a “loon” area along the far side of the mainline, as depicted in Figures 36-10.E and 36-10.F. The designer may incorporate low-volume existing and relocated driveways, or minor side roads, into a crossover intersection; provide channelization and where applicable an additional signal phase. Consider intersection sight distance, vehicle turning paths, and the need for signing or geometric measures to deter wrong-way movements.
NOT TO SCALE

TYPICAL RCUT LAYOUT INCLUDING SIGNAL LOCATIONS

Figure 36-10.E

Raised Median (Typ.)
Expressways and four-lane divided arterials typically move large volumes of through traffic as a primary function. Signals that provide a high percentage of mainline green promote progression and improve operations over a wide range of traffic demands. Because RCUTs can require only two phases instead of the four (or more) phases needed at conventional intersections, and because the two mainline directions will operate independently, opportunities to optimize primary route progression is a primary advantage for RCUT corridors. Select cycle lengths that provide for effective mainline flows while not unduly delaying side road vehicles (and pedestrians where present). The timing offset for crossover signals (where needed) will typically fit within a progression band on the primary route regardless of offset distance. Guidance on signal operations at RCUTs and superstreet corridors is provided in the FHWA's Restricted Crossing U-Turn Intersection Informational Guide.

Safety benefits typically result from the redirection of the minor road through and left-turning movements. The number of vehicle-vehicle conflict points is reduced and the modified movements tend to result in less severe crashes. Compare the crash history of each existing intersection with statewide peer group intersections as a starting point in assessing the potential safety benefits of an RCUT design. Focus on assessment of crash types. RCUTs typically experience fewer angle and turning crashes than do conventional 4-legged intersections; however, increases in less-severe same-direction sideswipe and rear end crashes may be seen. Consider using Crash Modification Factors (CMFs) from the FHWA CMF Clearinghouse for converting unsignalized conventional intersections to unsignalized RCUTs; such assessment can be a primary justification for RCUT implementation.

Driver unfamiliarity can be a concern at RCUTs immediately after implementation, since some movements do not meet the expectations of drivers unfamiliar with this intersection type. However, experience in other states has indicated that drivers adapt fairly quickly to RCUT operations. Proper signing at an RCUT will typically lead to good operational and safety performance. Diagrammatic guide signs may be considered to aid drivers on the minor road approaches. Prominent “Right Turn Only” regulatory signs are required facing the side road approaches. Utilize “One Way” and “No Left Turn” signs strategically in accordance with the ILMUTCD. Signing can generally be ground-mounted rather than overhead. The Central Bureau of Operations can assist by providing a typical design; statewide consistency is sought.

Driveway access should be limited to the extent possible in close proximity to the main RCUT intersection. Because of access restrictions RCUTs can be perceived as adversely affecting businesses located near intersection or at the corners. Inferences can be drawn from the NCHRP
Report 420, which indicates that some land uses suffer economic losses with wide median installations. Businesses that rely on pass-by traffic, such as gas stations and convenience stores, may be affected by the less-direct access typically provided with an RCUT. Manage access in consideration of safety and efficiency. Discuss required access restrictions with potentially-affected property owners and local agency officials.

The combined median and loon area width needed to accommodate large vehicle U-turns at crossovers can sometimes result in ROW acquisition and/or spot location impacts. Given inherent flexibility, seek to locate crossovers and loons to minimize impacts while satisfying operational requirements. The potential for oversize loads should be discussed with the Bureau of Operations, as there may need to be restrictions placed on routing.

36-10.01(f) Pedestrian Accommodations

Figure 36-10.G shows typical pedestrian accommodations for a signalized RCUT at a minor side road; Figure 36-10.H depicts an accommodation scenario at a major side road. A raised median area is needed to establish refuge, and pedestrian signal heads and pushbuttons are required for the multi-stage crossings. Wayfinding signing may sometimes be helpful in guiding pedestrians. Offset sideroads, as illustrated schematically in Figure 36-10.I, would further simplify pedestrian movements where such a configuration is possible.
SIGNALIZED RCUT WITH MINOR SIDEROAD, INCLUDING PEDESTRIAN MOVEMENTS

Figure 36-10.G
Figure 36-10.H

SIGNALIZED RCUT WITH MAJOR SIDEROAD, INCLUDING PEDESTRIAN MOVEMENTS

Raised Curb Islands Providing Pedestrian Refuge (Typ.)

NOT TO SCALE

SIGNALS NOT SHOWN
Stakeholder Outreach

When RCUTs are considered it is important to provide effective outreach with communities and roadway users. Multiple forums can be used, including public informational meetings, local agency council meetings, and media campaigns. Highlight safety analyses that show a likely reduction in serious crashes. Investigate and report on the performance of similar RCUT locations already in service. Driver education can be important in reducing the potential for driver confusion; potentially coordinate with the Illinois Secretary of State’s office on a local education program.
**36-10.02 Median U-Turn Intersections**

Median U-Turn (MUT) intersections are at-grade signalized intersections where all left turns are indirect. U-turn movements occur at adjacent crossovers that are usually but not always also signalized. MUTs are very similar in many respects to signalized RCUTs but allow the minor road through movements. MUTs must always be signalized to handle those movements. They may be an effective design option for existing intersections with either operational and/or safety concerns along urban and suburban multi-lane arterials, and in series along corridors where the higher-volume cross streets warrant signals.

In almost all cases the MUT will redirect left-turning traffic from both primary and minor road approaches. Mainline drivers intending to turn left will continue beyond the main intersection, complete a U-turn maneuver at a downstream median opening, and then turn right to continue along the minor road. Sideroad traffic intending to turn left instead turns right and performs a U-turn at a crossover.

A schematic view of the MUT design movements is provided in Figure 36-10.J. An example layout of an overall MUT design is shown in Figure 36-10.K. The details of a typical U-turn intersection, incorporating a loon, are consistent with RCUT layouts shown in Section 36-10.1.

---

**MUT SCHEMATICS BY MOVEMENT**

*Figure 36-10.J*
TYPICAL MUT LAYOUT

Figure 36-10.K

MUTs typically improve safety performance by causing drivers to make a series of low-complexity decisions and allowing them to find adequate gaps more easily. Based on the changes in movement types, crashes that do occur at MUTs tend to be less severe than those that occur at traditional full-access signalized intersections. The total number of vehicular conflict points is reduced by approximately fifty percent.

Multiple MUTs can be installed along high-ADT primary routes as a signalized corridor treatment. This will typically improve traffic flow efficiency and improve safety performance compared to corridors with conventionally-designed intersections. Medians at MUTs can be very narrow; side road through vehicles are typically not allowed to store in the median. Wider open medians could be designed to allow for occasional vehicle storage in the median; however, clearing all median queues will improve efficiency and eliminate potential conflicts.
With maximum posted mainline speed limits of 45 mph (70 km/hr), median openings (crossovers) for U-turns are typically located 500 ft to 800 ft (150 m to 240 m) downstream of the main intersection, with locations dependent on speed and geometric factors. Two-phase signals are typically used. If traffic volumes are expected to grow substantially after initial opening, a MUT design can provide for expansion through a phased implementation. At least one ILMUTCD signal warrant must be met when MUTs are installed. The two mainline directions will not operate independently with MUTs; optimization of corridor progression bands is critical.

MUT intersections and corridors may be especially suitable where:

- There is heavy through and/or heavy left-turn volumes on primary route approaches;
- The ratio of the minor road approach volume to the total intersection approach volume is less than 0.40;
- The intersection is heavily-congested and signal phase failures (LOS F) occur for through and/or left-turn traffic on the primary route;
- Corridor access management is desirable;
- The history of intersection crashes, both overall and for turning and angle crashes, shows rates above the statewide average for peer group locations; and
- Sight distance constraints for left turns onto or off of the primary route seem to have led to crashes or documented near-misses.

36-10.02(a) General Design Considerations

The design spacing from the main intersection to the U-turn crossover, the “offset distance”, is guided by geometric limitations such as turn lane lengths and adjacent access points; 500 ft to 800 ft (150 m to 240 m) being the typical design range. Signals for the U-turn locations may be included where warranted and needed operationally. Pedestrians (usually present) are accommodated with crosswalks at each of the signalized intersections; see Section 36-10.2(e).

The crossover intersection must incorporate sufficient space for the design vehicle(s) to make the required U-turn movements. This typically requires widening pavement for a “loon” area along the far side of the mainline. It is possible to incorporate existing or relocated access points into a crossover intersection. If the crossover is signalized an additional phase will be required. Consider intersection sight distance, design vehicle turning paths, and the need for signing or geometric measures to deter wrong-way movements. Other potential design considerations are covered in Section 36-10.1(a).

36-10.02(b) Safety

Safety benefits typically result from the redirection of all left-turning movements at MUTs. The number of vehicle-vehicle conflict points is reduced and the conflict types are modified to be typically less severe than those at conventional intersections. Compare the crash history of each existing intersection with statewide peer group intersections as a starting point in assessing potential safety benefits of MUT.
36-10.02(c) Signing

Driver confusion can be a concern at MUTs immediately upon implementation, but experience in other states has indicated that drivers adapt fairly quickly to MUT operations. Proper signing at a MUT is critical to operational and safety performance, because some movements do not meet the expectations of drivers unfamiliar with this intersection type. Diagrammatic guide signs may be considered to aid drivers on all approaches. Prominent “No Left Turn” regulatory signs are needed facing each of the approaches. Most or all of the signing can be ground-mounted signs rather than overhead; signing design involves unique considerations at each location. The Central Bureau of Operations can assist by providing a typical design; statewide consistency is sought.

36-10.02(d) Access Management and Right of way Considerations

Driveways should not typically be allowed in close proximity to the main MUT intersection. MUTs can be perceived as adversely affecting businesses located near intersection or at the corners. Inferences can be drawn from the NCHRP Report 420, which indicates that some land uses suffer economic losses with wide median installations. Businesses that rely on pass-by traffic, such as gas stations and convenience stores, may be affected by less-direct access provided with a MUT. Designers should manage access in light of both safety and efficiency. Discuss issues with potentially-affected property owners and local agency officials.

Another concern with MUT designs is that the combined median and loon area width needed to accommodate large vehicles making U-turns at crossovers can result in ROW acquisition and/or impacts. Designers should seek to locate the loons to minimize impacts while satisfying operational requirements.

36-10.02(e) Pedestrian Accommodations

The two-phase signal at a MUT typically allows for a shorter cycle length than with a conventional intersection. Along the primary route a central raised median area is typically used, but suburban roadways may have wide medians. Based on these conditions, pedestrian crossings will often occur in two stages, with use of a median refuge. Typically include pedestrian signal heads and push buttons in the median to allow for two-stage crossings. For shorter crossings it may be possible for pedestrians to cross during a single phase. As always, it is important that all pedestrians follow the marked crosswalks; additional guidance may be provided to help ensure safe operations.

36-10.02(f) Stakeholder Outreach

When MUTs are considered it is important to provide effective outreach with communities and roadway users. Multiple forums can be used, including public informational meetings, local agency council meetings, and media campaigns. Highlight the potential safety benefits of the
Driver education can be important in reducing any initial driver confusion; potentially coordinate with the Illinois Secretary of State’s office on a local education program.

### 36-10.03 Displaced Left-Turn Intersections

Displaced Left Turn Intersections (DLTs), also known as a Continuous Flow Intersections (CFIs), have been implemented nationally as high-volume operational improvements. Compared to traditional signalized intersections, a DLT’s reduced traffic signal phases and fewer conflict points will improve traffic operations and safety performance under a range of relative-volume conditions. They may provide an effective design option for existing high-volume intersections along either multi-lane urban arterials with medians as narrow as 30 ft (9.0 m), and for rural multi-lane expressways with wide medians.

DLTs relocate, or displace, a left-turn movement to the other side of the opposing directional roadway in advance of the main intersection. This eliminates the separate left-turn phase at the main intersection since all through-movements and left turns from the main route proceed concurrently. The removal of high-volume conflicts from the main intersection to a preceding crossover often leads to both operational and safety-performance improvements. Coordinated traffic signals are required at the main intersection and each of the new crossover intersections. Figure 36-10.L illustrates a full DLT.

Designers must carefully consider each individual lane group volume in developing proposed geometry and selecting signal timings that accomplish the following goals:

- Reduce delay for the through vehicles,
- Reduce delay for left turning vehicles,
- Reduce the number of stops for all vehicles, and
- Increase the efficiency of pedestrian crossings (for relevant intersection legs).

Full interchanges are often the only effective alternative for handling the higher-end traffic volumes that can be processed at a DLT. A DLT design has a potential to reduce right-of-way acquisition and costs substantially when volumes are projected such that an interchange is under consideration. Specific safety concerns can also be successfully addressed as part of DLT designs, especially those related to left turns. Safety analyses will be an important part of alternatives evaluations.
TYPICAL PLAN VIEW WITH DISPLACED LEFT TURNS ON ALL APPROACHES

Figure 36-10.L
36-10.03(a) **General Design Considerations**

Figure 36-10.M shows typical DLT geometrics along one leg of a DLT intersection. Primary route left turning vehicles should typically cross the opposing through traffic lanes 450 ft to 650 ft (140 m to 200 m) upstream of the main intersection. This ‘upstream offset’ distance depends on the signal design and anticipated queuing under the coordinated system; offsets may need to be greater in some cases. Dual left-turn lanes are typically required based on the high-volumes of left turns at intersections where this design type is implemented. The signal control at the main intersection can often operate with two-phases and opposing mainline traffic lanes moving together. DLTs allow for a wide range of cycle lengths to be tested to optimize progression along a corridor.

Radii leading to the crossover movements will typically range from 90 ft to 200 ft (27 m to 60 m). The radii of the left-turn movements at each intersection depend on the dual turning movements of the design vehicle combination; refer to Section 36-3.05 for design guidance on dual turn lanes. Lane widths at the crossover reverse curves should typically be 13 ft to 14 ft (4.0 m to 4.3 m) wide and must accommodate the selected design vehicles side-by-side.

A full DLT with left-turn crossovers on all approaches would have five signalized junctions. Signal coordination with adjacent upstream and downstream intersections is very important to proper DLT operations. The location illustrated in Figure 36-10.M shows that the DLT concept can be implemented on a single mainline leg without changing operations on other legs. In this case, at a minimum a third signal phase would be required to handle the opposing mainline left turns.

The provision of separate right-turning lanes and channelized right-turn paths up to the crossover intersection is a typical feature of the DLT. Most but not all DLTs will relocate right turns in this way to improve overall LOS. Two options are then available for the right-turning traffic entering the primary route flow:

1. provide a non-stop merge condition (appropriate for single right-turn lanes with substantial mainline intersection spacing), or
2. stop traffic at the crossover intersection and allow it to proceed concurrently with the left turn crossing movement (required with dual right-turn lanes and/or with constrained mainline intersection spacing).

The upstream offset distance is primarily dependent on the expected queuing of through and left-turning vehicles from the main intersection. Greater offsets can substantially increase costs given the need to construct the left-turn storage area (for the crossed-over traffic) and often the right-turning pavement for the opposite movement traffic. Typically the offset distance should be minimized within operational constraints.

DLTs are usually retrofit designs. If the existing arterial has a wide median that is no longer needed for left-turn storage designers may consider narrowing the median by using transition curves on the approaches. Refer to Figure 36-10.L for an example of such median use. Balance operations with impacts and overall construction costs.
PARTIAL PLAN VIEW, DLT ON ONE MAJOR ROAD APPROACH

Figure 36-10.M

- Free-Flow Operation (illustrated, optional)
- Potential Local Route Relocations (example illustrated)
- Sidewalks and Crosswalks (option illustrated)
- Channelized Relocated Right Turns (typical)
36-10.03(b) **Safety**

The DLT has marginally fewer conflict points compared to a conventional intersection. At this time, no direct Crash Modification Factors (CMFs) are available from the FHWA CMF Clearinghouse for assessing the safety benefits of converting a traditional signalized intersection to a DLT. However, individual movements with crash history may be considered in order to estimate a potential change in safety performance. Compare the crash history of an existing intersection with statewide peer group intersections as a starting point in assessing the potential benefits of a DLT. Measures to increase non-motorized user safety should also be considered, as discussed in Chapter 17 and earlier in this chapter.

36-10.03(c) **Operations and Signing**

Operational benefits of a DLT are most evident with high left-turning and overall traffic volumes. Simultaneous movement of the left-turn and through traffic improves progression of traffic platoons and increases overall vehicular throughput. As part of an alternatives analysis designers should investigate and consider the value of vehicle delay reduction, queue length reduction, and overall capacity changes with a DLT.

Signing and marking of a DLT involve unique considerations. Emphasis should be given to ‘wrong-way’ pavement markings and signing to warn drivers of restrictions that they might not immediately recognize. Overhead and/or post-mounted guide signing should be placed at the left-turn crossover intersections. Since some movements can initially be counterintuitive to unfamiliar drivers unambiguous signing is critical. Consider providing ‘No Left Turn’ signs facing through traffic at the main intersection. Provide notification of lane assignments in advance of the intersection. Through-arrow pavement marking may be considered at locations such as those shown on Figure 36-10.M in order to reinforce required driving patterns. Other design features to improve effectiveness and safety at DLTs include channelizing islands, right-in-right-out driveways (rather than full access), high-visibility pedestrian refuge areas and crosswalks, raised pavement markers for lane delineation, and traffic flow separation using raised medians. Experience in other states has indicated that any initial driver confusion is quickly reduced as these intersections are opened and driver experience levels increase.

36-10.03(d) **Pedestrian and Bicyclist Accommodations**

For accommodating bicycle left turns at DLT intersections it may be appropriate to guide riders to the intersection proper, to proceed as would a pedestrian, rather than following the left turning paths of vehicles. Alternatively, adding a two-stage bicycle turning box encourages left-turning bicyclists to store at an appropriate location within the intersection before completing the second stage of their intended left turn.

Pedestrians are required to cross DLTs in multiple stages. Existing literature describes alternative pedestrian signal strategies including clockwise and counterclockwise optimization of pedestrian flows at a DLT intersection. Figure 36-10.M shows an accommodation example. There are
situations where accommodating pedestrians on only one side of the minor road crossing may provide overall operational advantages.

The position of intersection approach lanes can be counter-intuitive to pedestrians. The wide geometric footprint of the DLT, often combined with shorter signal cycle lengths, make pedestrian crossings a critical part of system optimization. Medians and corner islands must provide adequate pedestrian refuge. Refer to Section 36-4.03(b) for pedestrian refuge requirements.

Pedestrian time and distance considerations are less important than pedestrian safety. Figure 36-10.N shows typical pedestrian crossing paths among the four quadrants. Crossing the street diagonally typically requires the following procedure, following pedestrian signal heads:

1. Cross a channelized right-turn roadway to a pedestrian refuge island. Crosswalks for single-lane right-turning roadways may be provided with or without pedestrian pushbuttons at designer discretion (they are advisable for some wider crossings). Pedestrian pushbuttons are required for crossings of dual right turn lanes.

2. Cross all lanes of the first street that offers a “Walk” signal to reach the pedestrian refuge island on the opposite side.

3. Cross all lanes of the second street by crossing with a “Walk” signal to the diagonally opposite pedestrian refuge island.

4. Complete the crossing procedure by crossing a right-turn roadway; see #1 above.

The push-buttons for crossing the major legs of the intersection are located on the channelizing corner islands which serve as pedestrian refuge areas and must be sized for storage of the expected pedestrian streams at all locations.

Lighting designs may involve unique considerations at a DLT, particularly if pedestrian crosswalks will be part of the design; refer to Chapter 56.
PEDESTRIAN MOVEMENTS AT A DLT

Figure 36-10.N
36-10.03(e) **Access Issues**

It is advisable to evaluate with the Central Bureau of Operations emergency vehicle access for addressing crashes or disabled vehicle situations. The use of mountable curbs in the crossover area helps facilitate emergency vehicle access to the crossover and adjacent areas. Where present, the use of frontage roads may be part of an overall emergency access plan. Consider appropriate response procedures for the removal of disabled vehicles or a signal malfunction event.

Restriction of access to parcels located close to the main intersection is typically necessary. Locate driveways as far from the signalized intersections as possible. Approaches that have left-turn crossovers cannot accommodate median breaks within the distance of the new right-turn lanes (i.e., up to the crossover intersections). If any driveways on the approaches to the main intersection are allowed to remain, they must be right-in-right-out (RIRO) only.

36-10.03(f) **Stakeholder Outreach**

When a DLT is considered it is important to provide effective outreach with communities and roadway users. Multiple forums can be used, including public informational meetings, local agency council meetings, and media campaigns of various types. The results of the analysis related to vehicle delay and LOS may be an important area of discussion during local agency and public coordination. Public information and educational campaigns prior to opening a DLT can help mitigate local concerns. Driver education can be important to help minimize any initial driver confusion.
36-10.04 Continuous Green T Intersections

The continuous green T intersection, or CGT, is a 3-legged signalized intersection that allows for one of the mainline through movement (opposite the sideroad) to flow freely with a continuous green indication. CGTs have the potential to simultaneously address safety and operational concerns at existing T intersections, especially in suburban and rural locations that have higher than average crash rates, specific over-represented crash types, excessive delay, or high tractor-trailer truck traffic.

CGTs are typically used in locations where safety or operational concerns make a traditional 3-legged signalized intersection less effective. Example concerns could include low LOS for minor road movements during peak periods or rear-end crash patterns along the mainline. For locations currently unsignalized yet meeting at least one signal warrant, a CGT may provide a way to minimize disruption and address both increasing congestion and safety concerns related to inserting a new signal along rural or suburban roadways.

CGTs are most often appropriate in locations with design and posted speeds of 40 mph to 55 mph (60 km/hr to 90 km/hr). In lower speed urban locations with pedestrian presence the potential conflicts created by the preferential mainline vehicle flows can run counter to the safety and accommodation goals common to urban and urban core contexts.

36-10.04(a)

Figure 36-10.O shows a typical CGT layout. CGTs are signalized intersections. It may be possible, however, to incorporate CGT geometric design features into an unsignalized T intersection location, with a plan to add signals later as traffic demand grows.

CGTs require that adequate median width is available to develop channelization. A raised curb or barrier median is included along the mainline to provide channelized left-turning movements, physically separate median left turn (diverging) traffic, and allow accelerating traffic to reach appropriate speeds before merging with mainline flows.

Raised curb islands are most commonly used for the channelization, but at high speeds concrete median barriers may be used. In either case, offset the face of curb/barrier by a full shoulder width when the posted speed is greater than 45 mph (70 km/hr). An advantage of a raised curb treatment is that the better visibility provided between vehicles allows drivers to react appropriately to adjacent traffic.

36-10.04(b) Signalization

The traffic signal at a CGT operates with three phases, with left turns from the mainline usually having protected-only phasing. The far-side mainline through movement is typically free-flow, and green arrow signal faces are provided to inform drivers of that condition. The provision of a typically free-flow movement means that CGTs will have limited applications in urban areas.
36-10.04(c) **Access**

In some cases, one or more mainline access point may need to be located within or immediately adjacent to the intersection. However, the number of driveways should be limited and those present should be offset from the signal location to the extent possible. Busier commercial entrances and sideroads should preferably be located completely outside of the intersection (channelization) area. Major driveways may require both STOP and RIGHT TURN ONLY signs. Consider ONE WAY signs in the median facing private entrances.

36-10.04(d) **Safety**

CGT intersections address safety primarily by improving the operational characteristics of the intersection, channelizing the left turn movements, and providing for protected left-turn movements.

36-10.04(e) **Pedestrian Accommodations**

With any level of pedestrian activity, the free-flow movement will need to be stopped whenever pedestrians activate a pushbutton or are passively detected. Due to this additional phase, and the potential for safety issues, pedestrian presence at an intersection may be of sufficient concern that CGTs not be considered. If implemented in areas with pedestrian presence, signalization and high-visibility pedestrian crossings will be needed. In urban locations, overall operational advantages in comparison to a more traditional design could be justification for CGT implementation. However, stress high-visibility crossings and added safety features as part of CGT designs in urban and suburban locations.
36-11 REFERENCES


